EM MALIBU

OWNER'S HANDBOOK

GM Holden Ltd, ABN 84 006 893 232 (hereinafter Holden)

Change of name, address or ownership

In the event of a Safety Recall, or for various reasons, Holden may need to contact you as the owner of this vehicle.

If you have recently changed your address, or name, or purchased this vehicle second-hand, please help us to help you by taking a few minutes to fill in and mail the forms at the beginning of the Service/warranty booklet.

For information about GM Holden's privacy policy or to update owner details online, please visit Holden's website at www.holden.com.au

Note Please refer to the inside front cover of the Service/ warranty booklet for the Vehicle Identification Certificate.

Printed in Australia
Part No. 92274413
January 2014 (MY14 EM Malibu. Print 1)

© 2014 GM Holden Ltd
Reproduction in whole or part is prohibited without written approval from GM Holden Ltd, ABN 84 006 893 232

2014 Holden Malibu Owner Manual

In Brief 1-1
Instrument Panel 1-2
Initial Drive Information 1-4
Vehicle Features 1-13
Performance and Maintenance 1-15

Keys, Doors, and Windows 2-1
Keys and Locks 2-1
Doors 2-8
Vehicle Security 2-10
Exterior Mirrors 2-12
Interior Mirrors 2-13
Windows 2-14

Seats and Restraints 3-1
Head Restraints 3-2
Front Seats 3-3
Rear Seats 3-7
Seat Belts 3-9
Airbag System 3-15
Child Restraints 3-23

Storage 4-1
Storage Compartments 4-1
Additional Storage Features ... 4-3

Instruments and Controls 5-1
Controls 5-2
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 5-6
Information Displays 5-18
Vehicle Messages 5-21
Vehicle Personalisation 5-27

Lighting 6-1
Exterior Lighting 6-1
Interior Lighting 6-4
Lighting Features 6-5

Infotainment System 7-1
Introduction 7-1
Radio 7-12
Audio Players 7-25
Navigation 7-35
Voice Recognition 7-55
Bluetooth Phone/Devices 7-61
Trademarks and Licence Agreements 7-70

Climate Controls 8-1
Climate Control Systems 8-1
Air Vents 8-6
Maintenance 8-7

Driving and Operating 9-1
Driving Information 9-2
Starting and Operating 9-3
Engine Exhaust 9-8
Automatic Transmission 9-10
Brakes 9-12
Ride Control Systems 9-16
Cruise Control 9-20
Driver Assistance Systems ... 9-22
Fuel 9-26
Towing 9-30
Conversions and Add-Ons ... 9-34

Vehicle Care 10-1
General Information 10-2
Vehicle Checks 10-2
Headlamp Aiming 10-22
Bulb Replacement 10-23
Electrical System 10-26
Wheels and Tyres 10-33
Jump Starting 10-53

Towing 10-56
Appearance Care 10-57

Service and Maintenance . . . 11-1
General Information 11-1
Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts 11-3

Technical Data 12-1
Vehicle Identification 12-1
Vehicle Data 12-3

Customer Information 13-1
Customer Information 13-1

Index i-1

The names, logos, emblems, slogans, vehicle model names, and vehicle body designs appearing in this manual including, but not limited to, GM, the GM logo, HOLDEN, the HOLDEN Emblem, MALIBU, and the MALIBU Emblem are trademarks and/or service marks of General Motors LLC, its subsidiaries, affiliates, or licensors.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle either because they are options that you did not purchase or due to changes subsequent to the printing of this owner manual. Please refer to the purchase documentation relating to your specific vehicle to confirm each of the features found on your vehicle.

Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

Introduction

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness, and economy.

This owner's manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

Using this Manual

- The “In Brief” section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The Index will enable you to search for specific information.

Danger, Warnings, and Cautions

⚠ Danger

Text marked ⚠ Danger provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

⚠ Warning

Text marked ⚠ Warning provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

⚠ Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means “Do Not,” “Do not do this,” or “Do not let this happen.”

Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gauge, or indicator.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see the owner manual for additional instructions or information.

: This symbol is shown when you need to see a service manual for additional instructions or information.

Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean. For more information on the symbol, refer to the Index.

: Airbag Readiness Light

: Air Conditioning

: Antilock Brake System (ABS)

: Audio Steering Wheel Controls

: Brake System Warning Light

: Charging System

: Cruise Control

: Engine Coolant Temperature

: Exterior Lamps

: Fog Lamps

: Fuel Gauge

: Fuses

: Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: ISOFIX System Child Restraints

: Malfunction Indicator Lamp

: Oil Pressure

: Power

: Seat Belt Reminders

: Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

: Windscreen Washer Fluid

In Brief

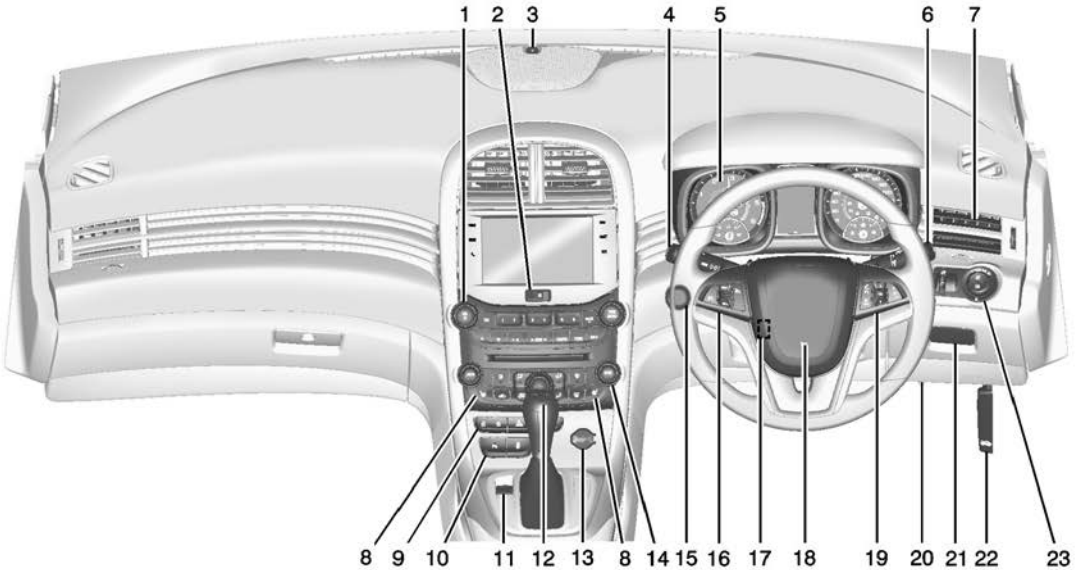
Instrument Panel
Instrument Panel 1-2

Initial Drive Information
Initial Drive Information 1-4
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 1-4
Door Locks 1-4
Windows 1-5
Seat Adjustment 1-5
Second Row Seats 1-7
Heated Seats 1-7
Head Restraint Adjustment 1-8
Seat Belts 1-8
Mirror Adjustment 1-8
Steering Wheel Adjustment . . . 1-9
Interior Lighting 1-9
Exterior Lighting 1-10
Windscreen Wiper/Washer . . . 1-10
Climate Controls 1-11
Transmission 1-12

Vehicle Features
Steering Wheel Controls 1-13
Cruise Control 1-13
Driver Information Centre (DIC) 1-14
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 1-14
Ultrasonic Parking Assist 1-14
Power Outlets 1-15

Performance and Maintenance
Traction Control System (TCS) 1-15
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 1-15
Engine Oil Life System (Diesel) 1-15
Driving for Better Fuel Economy 1-16

Instrument Panel



1. Infotainment system controls. See *Overview on page 7-1.*
2. Storage Area. See *Instrument Panel Storage on page 4-1.*
3. Sensor. See *Automatic Headlamp System on page 6-2.*
4. *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-3.*
5. *Instrument Cluster on page 5-7.*
6. Turn Signal lever. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 6-3.*

   Driver Information Centre Buttons. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-18.*
7. *Air Vents on page 8-6.*
8. *Heated Front Seats on page 3-6* (If Equipped).
9. *Power Door Locks on page 2-7.*

   Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-2.

   Passenger Seat Belt Reminder Light. See *Seat Belt Reminders on page 5-9.*
10. *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-22*.

    Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-16 / *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-18*.
11. *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-13*.
12. Shift Lever. See *Automatic Transmission on page 9-10*.
13. *Power Outlets on page 5-5*.
14. *Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1* (If Equipped).

    Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-4 (If Equipped).
15. *Ignition Positions on page 9-3*.
16. *Cruise Control on page 9-20*.
17. *Steering Wheel Adjustment on page 5-2*.
18. *Horn on page 5-3*.
19. *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-2*.
20. Data Link Connector (Out of View). See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-10*.
21. Storage Compartment. See *Instrument Panel Storage on page 4-1*.
22. Bonnet Release. See *Bonnet on page 10-3*.
23. *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.

    Front Fog Lamps on page 6-3 (If Equipped).

    Instrument Panel Illumination Control on page 6-4.

Initial Drive Information

This section provides a brief overview about some of the important features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle.

For more detailed information, refer to each of the features which can be found later in this owner manual.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

The RKE transmitter may work up to 20 m (65 ft) away from the vehicle.

Press the button to extend the key. The key can be used for all locks.

: Press to unlock the driver door or all doors.

: Press to lock all doors.

Lock and unlock feedback can be personalised.

: Press and hold to release the boot.

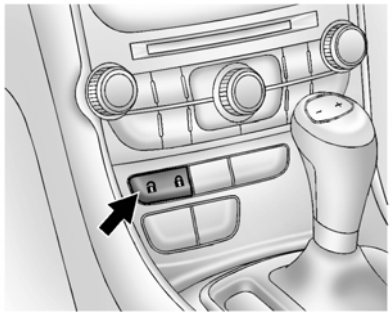
See *Keys on page 2-1* and *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.

Door Locks

To lock or unlock the doors from the outside:

- Press or on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.
- Use the key in the driver door.

To lock or unlock the doors from the inside:

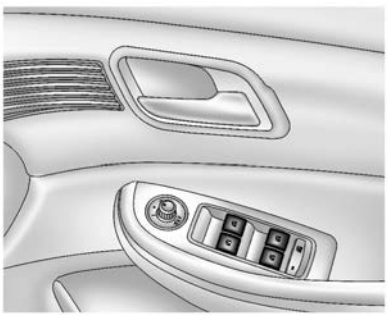


- Press or .

- Push the door lock snib on the top of the door to lock that door only.
- Pull the door handle once to unlock the door. Pulling the handle again unlatches the door.

See *Door Locks on page 2-6* or *Power Door Locks on page 2-7*.

Windows



Press the switch down to open the window. Pull the front of the switch up to close it.

The power windows only operate with the ignition in ACC/ ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-5*.

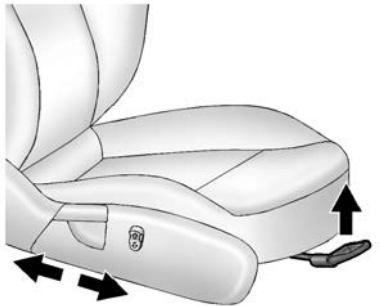
Express Window Operation

Windows with an express-down feature allow the window to be lowered without holding the switch. If equipped, windows may also have an express-up feature. Pull a window switch up or press it down all the way, release it, and the window goes up or down automatically. Stop the window by pulling or pressing the switch in the same direction a second time, or by briefly operating the switch to the first detent in either direction.

See *Power Windows on page 2-14*.

Seat Adjustment

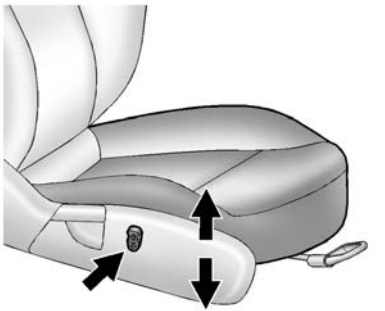
Manual Seats



To adjust a manual seat:

1. Pull the handle at the front of the seat.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the handle.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to be sure it is locked in place.

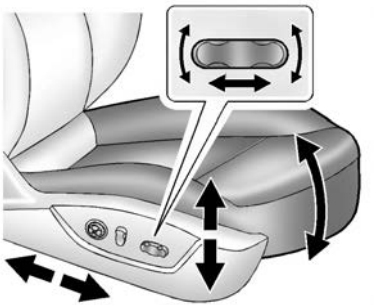
Seat Height Adjuster



If available, press and hold the top or bottom of the switch to raise or lower the seat. Release the switch when the desired height is reached.

See *Seat Adjustment on page 3-3*.

Power Seats

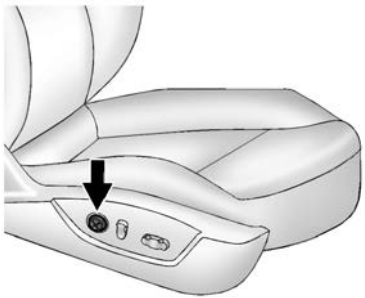


To adjust a power seat, if equipped:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the entire control up or down.

See *Power Seat Adjustment on page 3-4*.

Lumbar Adjustment



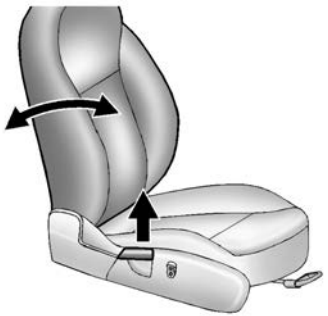
To adjust the lumbar support, if available:

- Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or decrease lumbar support.
- Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the height of the lumbar support.

See *Lumbar Adjustment on page 3-4*.

Reclining Seatbacks

Manual Reclining Seatbacks



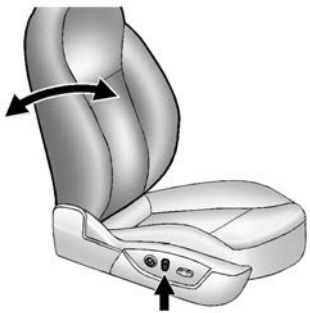
To recline a manual seatback:

1. Lift the lever.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, and then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback, and the seatback will return to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Power Reclining Seatbacks



To adjust a power seatback, if available:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

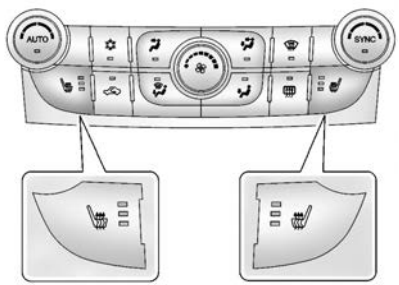
See *Reclining Seatbacks on page 3-5*.

Second Row Seats

The rear seatbacks can be folded down to increase cargo space.

See *Rear Seats on page 3-7*.

Heated Seats



If available, the buttons are on the climate control panel. To operate, the engine must be running.

Press or to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback. Indicator lights on the button show the current setting.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the heated seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The lights indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

See *Heated Front Seats on page 3-6*.

Head Restraint Adjustment

Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

To achieve a comfortable seating position, change the seatback recline angle as little as necessary while keeping the seat and the head restraint height in the proper position.

See *Head Restraints on page 3-2* and *Seat Adjustment on page 3-3*.

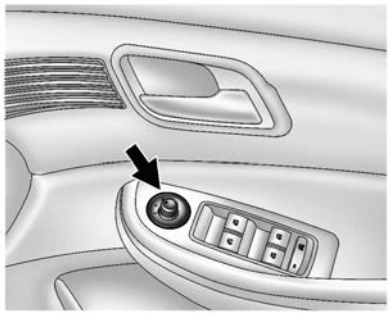
Seat Belts

Refer to the following sections for important information on how to use seat belts properly:

- *Seat Belts on page 3-9*.
- *Lap-Shoulder Belt on page 3-11*.

Mirror Adjustment

Exterior Mirrors



1. Turn the selector switch to L (Left) or R (Right) to choose the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Move the control to adjust the mirror.
3. Turn the selector switch to ○ to deselect the mirror.

Interior Mirror

Adjustment

Hold the rear view mirror in the centre and move it to view the area behind the vehicle.

Manual Rear view Mirror

Pull the tab rearward for daytime use and push it forward for night-time use to avoid glare from the headlamps from behind. See *Manual Rear View Mirror on page 2-13*.

Steering Wheel Adjustment

To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Push the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Interior Lighting

Dome Lamps

The interior lamps control in the overhead console controls both the front and rear interior lamps.

To operate, press the buttons:

: Turns the lamps off.

: Turns the lamps on when any door is opened.

: Keeps the lamps on all the time.

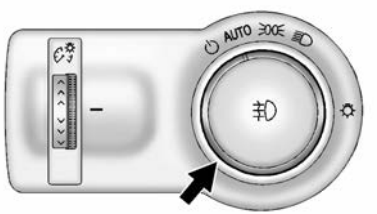
Reading Lamps

There are reading lamps in the overhead console

or : Press the button near each lamp to turn it on or off.

For more information, see *Instrument Panel Illumination Control on page 6-4*.

Exterior Lighting



The exterior lamp control is on the instrument panel on the right side of the steering wheel.

: Turns off the exterior lamps. The knob returns to the AUTO position after it is released. Turn to again to reactivate the AUTO mode.

AUTO: Automatically turns the exterior lamps on and off, depending on outside lighting.

: Turns on the park lamps including all lamps, except the headlamps.

: Turns on the headlamps together with the park lamps and instrument panel lights.

See:

- *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*
- *Front Fog Lamps on page 6-3*

Windscreen Wiper/ Washer

With the ignition in ACC/ ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, move the lever to select the wiper speed.

: For a single wipe, briefly move the lever up. For several wipes, hold the lever up.

OFF: Use to turn the wipers off.

INT: Move the lever down to INT for intermittent wipes, then turn the ▶ INT band down for more frequent wipes or up for less frequent wipes.

LO: Use for slow wipes.

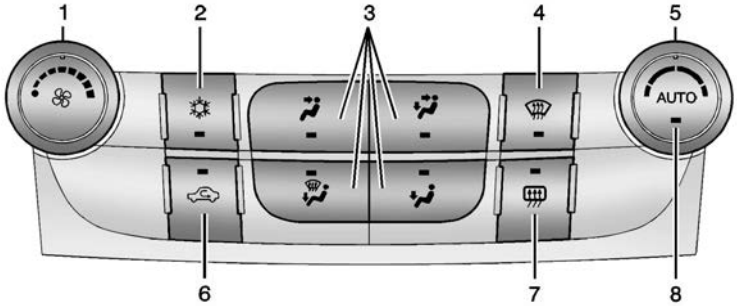
HI: Use for fast wipes.

↓ **:** Pull the lever toward you to spray windscreen washer fluid and activate the wipers.

See *Windscreen Wiper/Washer on page 5-3*.

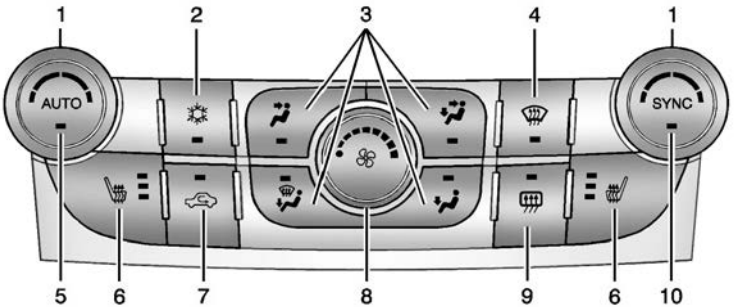
Climate Controls

The heating, cooling, and ventilation for the vehicle can be controlled with this system.



Automatic Climate Control System

1. Fan Control
2. Air Conditioning
3. Air Delivery Modes
4. Defrost
5. Temperature Control
6. Recirculation
7. Rear Window Demister
8. AUTO (Automatic Operation)



Dual Automatic Climate Control System

1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
2. Air Conditioning
3. Air Delivery Modes
4. Defrost
5. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
6. Heated Seats
7. Recirculation
8. Fan Control
9. Rear Window Demister
10. SYNC

See *Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1* or *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-4* (If Equipped).

Transmission

Driver Shift Control (DSC)

To use this feature:

1. Move the shift lever from D (Drive) rearward to M (Manual).
2. Press the + (plus) end of the button on the top of the shift lever to upshift, or push the − (minus) end of the button to downshift.

While using the DSC feature the transmission will have firmer shifting and sportier performance. You can use this for sport driving or when climbing hills to stay in gear longer or to downshift for more power or engine braking.

See *Manual Mode on page 9-11*.

Vehicle Features

Steering Wheel Controls

Some audio functions can be controlled through the steering wheel controls.

/ : Press to interact with Bluetooth. See *Bluetooth on page 7-61*.

/ : Press to decline an incoming call, or to end a current call. Press to silence the vehicle speakers while using the infotainment system. Press again to turn the sound on.

SRC : Press to select an audio source.

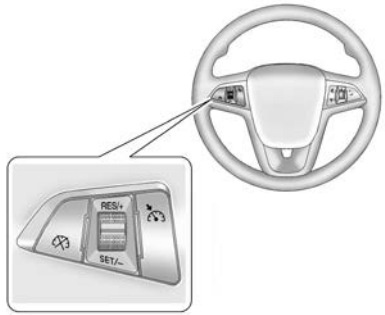
Use the thumbwheel to select the next or previous favourite radio station, CD track, MP3 track, USB track, and Bluetooth Audio track.

Use SRC to skip to the next song or show using Pandora or Stitcher. See *Pandora Internet Radio on page 7-16* or *Stitcher Internet Radio on page 7-21*.

+ −: Press + to increase the volume. Press − to decrease.

See *Steering Wheel Controls on page 5-2*.

Cruise Control



: Press to turn the cruise control system on and off. An indicator light will turn on or off in the instrument cluster.

: Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

RES/+: Move the thumbwheel up briefly to make the vehicle resume to a previously set speed or hold

upwards to accelerate. If cruise control is already active, use to increase vehicle speed.

SET/−: Move the thumbwheel down briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control. If cruise control is already active, use to decrease speed.

See *Cruise Control on page 9-20*.

Driver Information Centre (DIC)

The DIC display is in the centre of the instrument cluster. It shows the status of many vehicle systems. The controls for the DIC are on the turn signal lever.

SET/CLR: Press to set, or press and hold to clear, the menu item displayed.

△ ▽ : Use the band to scroll through the items in each menu.

MENU: Press to display the DIC menus. This button is also used to return to or exit the last screen displayed on the DIC.

See *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-18*.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

The RVC displays a view of the area behind the vehicle when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse). The display will appear on the radio screen.

To clean the camera lens above the number plate, rinse it with water and wipe it with a soft cloth.

See *Rear Vision Camera (RVC) on page 9-24*.

Ultrasonic Parking Assist

This system uses sensors on the rear bumper to assist with parking and avoiding objects while in R (Reverse). It operates at speeds less than 8 km/h. UPA uses audible beeps to provide distance and system information.

Keep the sensors on the vehicle's rear bumper clean to ensure proper operation.

See *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-22*.

Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a mobile phone or MP3 player.

There are two accessory power outlets: one on the centre stack below the climate control and one under the armrest inside the centre console storage.

Open the protective cover to use the accessory power outlet.

See *Power Outlets on page 5-5*.

Performance and Maintenance

Traction Control System (TCS)

The traction control system limits wheel spin. The system turns on automatically every time the vehicle is started.

- To turn off traction control, press and release OFF on the centre stack. illuminates in the instrument cluster.
- Press and release the button again to turn on traction control.

See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-16*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

The Electronic Stability Control system assists with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions. The system turns on automatically every time the vehicle is started.

- To turn off both traction control and Electronic Stability Control, press and hold OFF until and OFF illuminate in the instrument cluster.
- Press and release the button again to turn on both systems.

See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-18*.

Engine Oil Life System (Diesel)

The engine oil life system calculates engine oil life based on vehicle use and displays the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message when it is time to change the engine oil and filter. The oil life system should be reset to 100% only following an oil change.

Resetting the Oil Life System

1. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN with the engine off.
2. Press the DIC MENU button on the turn signal lever to enter the Vehicle Information Menu. Use the thumbwheel to scroll through the menu items until you reach REMAINING OIL LIFE.
3. Press the SET/CLR button to reset the oil life at 100%.
4. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

See *Engine Oil Life System (Diesel) on page 10-10*.

Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Driving habits can affect fuel usage. Here are some driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible.

- Avoid fast starts and accelerate smoothly.
- Brake gradually and avoid abrupt stops.
- Avoid idling the engine for long periods of time.
- When road and weather conditions are appropriate, use cruise control.
- Always follow posted speed limits or drive more slowly when conditions require.
- Keep vehicle tyres properly inflated.
- Combine several trips into a single trip.
- Follow recommended scheduled maintenance.

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks
Keys 2-1
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 2-2
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 2-3
Door Locks 2-6
Power Door Locks 2-7
Door Open Reminder 2-7
Automatic Door Locks 2-7
Safety Locks 2-8

Doors
Boot 2-8

Vehicle Security
Vehicle Security 2-10
Vehicle Alarm System 2-10
Immobiliser Operation 2-11

Exterior Mirrors
Convex Mirrors 2-12
Power Mirrors 2-13
Folding Mirrors 2-13
Heated Mirrors 2-13

Interior Mirrors
Manual Rear View Mirror 2-13

Windows
Windows 2-14
Power Windows 2-14
Sun Visors 2-16

Keys and Locks

Keys

⚠ Danger

Leaving children in a vehicle with a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is dangerous and children or others could be seriously injured or killed. They could operate the power window or other controls or make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the RKE transmitter in the vehicle, and children or others could be caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave children in a vehicle with an RKE transmitter.

The key that is part of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter can be used for all locks.

Press the button on the RKE transmitter to extend the key. Press the button and the key blade to retract the key.

If it becomes difficult to turn the key, inspect the key blade for debris. Periodically clean with a brush or pick.

See your dealer if a new key is needed.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

Do not make changes or modifications to the RKE. This could void authorisation to use this equipment.

If there is a decrease in the RKE operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The Keyless Access system allows for vehicle entry when the transmitter is within range. See “Keyless Access Operation” following.

The transmitter functions may work up to 20 m (65 ft) away from the vehicle.

Other conditions, such as those previously stated, can impact the performance of the transmitter.

(Lock): Press to lock all doors.

The turn signal indicators may flash and/or the horn may sound to indicate locking, see “Remote Lock/Unlock/Start” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-27*.

If the driver door is open when is pressed, all doors lock except the driver door, if enabled through the vehicle personalisation.

If the passenger door is open when is pressed, all doors lock.

Pressing may also arm the theft-deterrent system. See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-10*.

When the doors are locked, the fuel door is also locked.

On some models, pressing and holding will close all of the vehicle's windows.

(Unlock): Press to unlock the driver door or all doors. See “Remote Lock/Unlock/Start” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-27*.

The turn signal indicators may flash to indicate unlocking. See “Remote Unlock Feedback” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-27*.

Pressing will disarm the theft-deterrent system. See *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-10*.

Pressing will also unlock the fuel door.

(Remote Boot Release): Press and hold to release the boot.

Keyless Access Operation

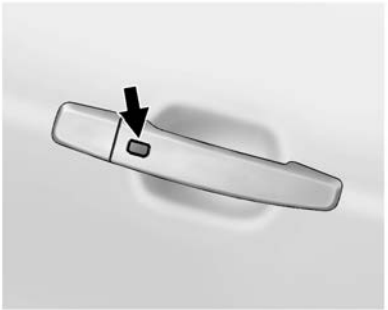
The Keyless Access system allows the door and boot to be locked and unlocked without pressing the RKE transmitter button. The RKE transmitter must be within 1 m (3 ft) of the door being opened. If the

vehicle has this feature, there will be a button on the outside front door handles.

The Keyless Access can be programmed to unlock all doors on the first unlock/lock button press from the driver door. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-27*.

Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Driver Door

When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within range of the door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on the driver door handle will unlock the driver door. If the lock/unlock button is pressed again within five seconds, all passenger doors will unlock.



Driver Side Shown, Passenger Similar

Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause all doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- It has been more than five seconds since the first lock/unlock button press.
- Two lock/unlock button presses were used to unlock all doors.
- Any vehicle door has been opened and all doors are now closed.

Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Passenger Doors

When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within range of the door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on a passenger door handle will unlock all doors. Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause all doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- The lock/unlock button was used to unlock all doors.
- Any vehicle door has been opened and all doors are now closed.

Passive Locking

This feature will lock the vehicle several seconds after all doors are closed, if the vehicle is turned off and at least one RKE transmitter has been removed from the interior or none remain in the interior.

Temporary Disable Passive Locking Feature

Temporarily disable the passive locking by pressing and holding on the instrument panel switch with a door open for at least four seconds, or until three chimes are heard. Passive locking will then remain disabled until on the instrument panel is pressed, or until the vehicle is turned on.

To customise the doors to automatically lock when exiting the vehicle, see “Remote Lock/Unlock/ Start” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-27*.

Keyless Boot Opening

Press the touch pad on the rear of the boot above the number plate to open the boot when the RKE transmitter is in range.

Keyed Access

For accessing a vehicle with a dead transmitter battery, see *Door Locks on page 2-6*.

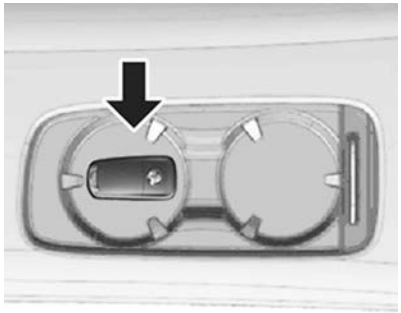
Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

Only RKE transmitters programmed to the vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer. The vehicle can be reprogrammed so that lost or stolen transmitters no longer work. Any remaining transmitters will need to be reprogrammed. See your dealer to program transmitters to this vehicle.

Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery

If the transmitter battery is weak or there is interference with the signal, the DIC may display NO REMOTE DETECTED or USE TRANSMITTER POCKET TO START. The REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message may also be displayed at this time.

To start the vehicle:



1. Place the transmitter in the rearmost cupholder in the console with the Holden logo facing upwards.
2. With the vehicle in P (Park) or N (Neutral), press the brake pedal and the ENGINE START/ STOP button. See *Starting the Engine on page 9-5*.

   Replace the transmitter battery as soon as possible.

Battery Replacement

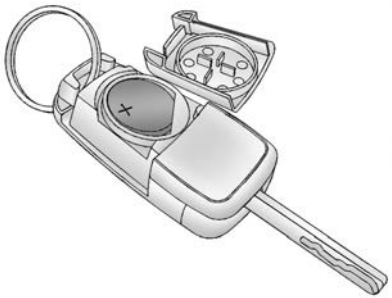
⚠ Warning

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in accordance with environmental protection regulations to help protect the environment and your health.

Replace the battery if the REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message displays in the DIC.

The battery is not rechargeable. To replace the battery:

1. Push the button on the transmitter to extend the key blade.



2. Remove the battery cover by prying it open with a finger.
3. Remove the battery by pushing on the battery and sliding it toward the key blade.
4. Insert the new battery, positive side facing up. Push the battery down until it is held in place. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
5. Snap the battery cover back on to the transmitter.

Door Locks

⚠ Danger

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear seat belts properly whenever the vehicle is driven.
- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.

There are several ways to lock and unlock the vehicle.

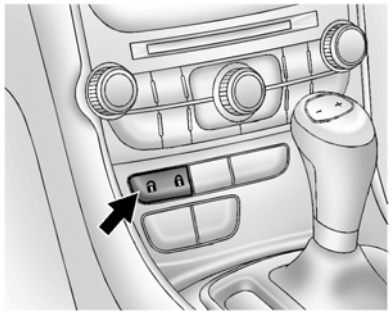
From the outside:

- Turn the key in the driver door lock anticlockwise to lock the door and clockwise to unlock it.
- Press or on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

From the inside:

- Push down on the manual lock snib on the door.
- Pull the door handle once to unlock the door. Pull the door handle again to unlatch the door.
- Press or on the instrument panel.

Power Door Locks



(Lock): Press to lock the doors.

(Unlock): Press to unlock the doors.

Locking or unlocking the doors will also lock or unlock the boot. See *Boot on page 2-8*.

Door Open Reminder

A chime will sound and the appropriate door message will display on the Driver Information Centre (DIC) if one of the doors is not fully closed. This happens when the ignition is on and the shift lever is moved out of P (Park) or N (Neutral). See *Door Open Messages on page 5-22*.

Automatic Door Locks

The vehicle may be programmed to lock all doors automatically when the following are met:

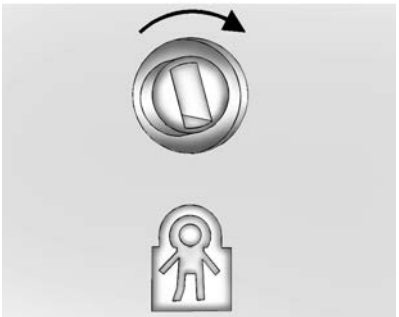
- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- The vehicle is shifted out of P (Park).

All doors will unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

The power door unlock function can be personalised using the Vehicle Settings Menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-27* for more information.

Safety Locks

The vehicle has rear door security locks to prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from the inside.



Open the rear doors to access the security locks on the inside edge of each door.

To set the locks, insert a key into the slot and turn it to the horizontal position. The door can only be opened from the outside with the door unlocked. To return the door to normal operation, turn the slot to the vertical position.

Doors

Boot

⚠ Danger

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven with the boot open, or with any objects that pass through the seal between the body and the boot. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle must be driven with the boot open:

- Close all of the windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

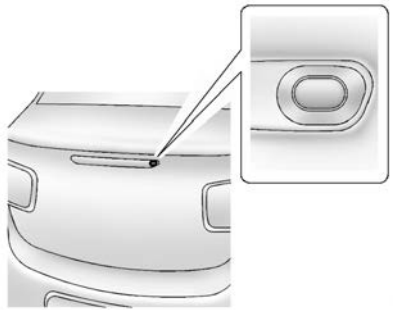
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-8*.

Boot Release

The boot can only be opened while the vehicle is in P (Park) or when the ignition is off.

Press on the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.



Unlock the boot first by pressing on the centre stack or RKE transmitter. Then, press the touch pad on the boot to open it.

Close the boot by pulling the handle on the inside of the boot lid.

Emergency Boot Release Handle

⚠ Caution

Do not use the emergency boot release handle as a tie-down or anchor point when securing items in the boot as it could damage the handle.

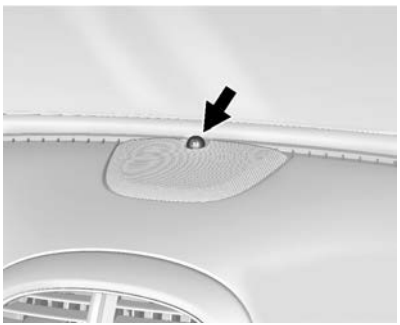
There is a glow-in-the-dark emergency boot release handle inside the boot on the boot latch. This handle glows following exposure to light. Pull the release handle up to open the boot from the inside.

Vehicle Security

This vehicle has theft-deterrent features; however, they do not make the vehicle impossible to steal.

Vehicle Alarm System

This vehicle has an anti-theft alarm system.



The indicator light, on the instrument panel near the windshield, indicates the status of the system:

Off: Alarm system is disarmed.

On Solid: Vehicle is secured during the delay to arm the system.

Fast Flash: Vehicle is unsecured. A door, the bonnet, or the boot is open.

Slow Flash: Alarm system is armed.

Arming the Alarm System

1. Close the boot and the bonnet. Turn off the vehicle.
2. Lock the vehicle in one of three ways:
   - Use the RKE transmitter.
   - Use the Keyless Access system, if equipped.
   - With a door open, press on the interior.
3. After 30 seconds the alarm system will arm, and the indicator light will begin to slowly flash indicating the alarm system is operating. Pressing on the RKE transmitter a second time

will bypass the 30-second delay and immediately arm the alarm system.

The vehicle alarm system will not arm if the doors are locked with the key.

If the driver door is opened without first unlocking with the RKE transmitter, the horn will chirp and the lights will flash to indicate pre-alarm. If the vehicle is not started, or the door is not unlocked by pressing on the RKE transmitter during the 10-second pre-alarm, the alarm will be activated.

If a door, the bonnet, or the boot is opened without first disarming the system, the turn signals will flash and the horn will sound for about 30 seconds. The alarm system will then re-arm to monitor for the next unauthorised event.

Disarming the Alarm System

Do one of the following to disarm the alarm system or turn off the alarm if it has been activated:

- Press on the RKE transmitter.
- Unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Access system, if equipped.
- Start the vehicle.

To avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- Lock the vehicle after all occupants have left the vehicle and all doors are closed.
- Always unlock a door with the RKE transmitter or use the Keyless Access system, if equipped.

Unlocking the driver door with the key will not disarm the system or turn off the alarm.

Immobiliser Operation

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The vehicle is automatically immobilised when the transmitter leaves the vehicle.

The immobilisation system is disarmed when the ignition button is pushed in and a valid transmitter is found in the vehicle.

The security light on the instrument cluster comes on when there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

The system has one or more transmitters matched to an immobiliser control unit in the

vehicle. Only a correctly matched transmitter will start the vehicle. If the transmitter is ever damaged, you may not be able to start your vehicle.

When trying to start the vehicle, the security light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on.

If the vehicle does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the vehicle off and try again.

If the RKE transmitter appears to be undamaged, try another transmitter, or place the transmitter in the transmitter pocket. See “Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.

If the vehicle does not start with the other transmitter or when the transmitter is in the transmitter pocket, your vehicle needs service. See your dealer who can service the theft-deterrent system and have a new transmitter programmed to the vehicle.

Do not leave the transmitter or device that disarms or deactivates the theft-deterrent system in the vehicle.

Exterior Mirrors

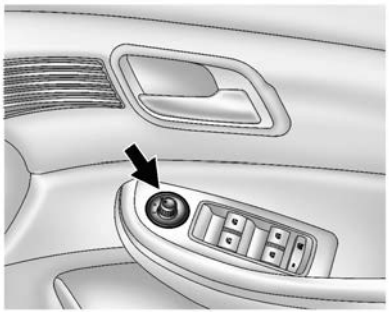
Convex Mirrors

⚠ Warning

A convex mirror can make things, like other vehicles, look further away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on the right. Check the inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

The passenger side mirror is convex shaped. A convex mirror's surface is curved so more can be seen from the driver seat.

Power Mirrors



To adjust the mirrors:

1. Turn the selector switch to L (Left) or R (Right) to choose the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Move the control to adjust the mirror.
3. Turn the selector switch to ○ to deselect the mirror.

Folding Mirrors

Manual Folding Mirrors

The mirrors can be folded inward toward the vehicle to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. Push the mirror outward to return it to the original position.

Heated Mirrors

(Rear Demister): Press to heat the mirrors.

See “Rear Window Demister” under *Automatic Climate Control System on page 8-1* for more information.

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rear View Mirror

To adjust the inside rear view mirror, hold the rear view mirror in the centre and move it to view the area behind the vehicle.

Pull the tab rearward for daytime use and push it forward for night-time use to avoid glare from the headlamps from behind.

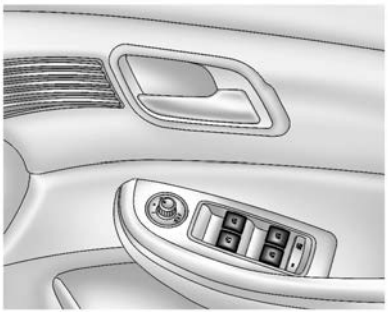
Windows

⚠ Danger

Never leave a child or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke.

The vehicle aerodynamics are designed to improve fuel economy performance. This may result in a pulsing sound when a window is partially open. To reduce the sound, open another window.

Power Windows



The power windows only operate with the ignition in ACC/ ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, or when in Retained Accessory Power (RAP). See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-5*.

Pressing or pulling the switch part of the way will open or close the window as long as the switch is operated.

Express-Down Window

The express-down feature allows the windows to be lowered fully without holding the window switch. Press the switch fully to activate the express-down feature. The express mode can be cancelled at any time by briefly pressing or pulling the switch.

Express-Up Window (If Equipped)

If equipped, the driver window may have the express-up feature. Pull the switch up fully and release the switch to activate. The express mode can be cancelled at any time by briefly pressing or pulling the switch.

Programming the Power Windows

If the battery on the vehicle has been recharged or disconnected, or is not working, the driver power window will need to be reprogrammed for the express-up feature to work. Replace or recharge the vehicle battery before reprogramming.

To program the driver window:

1. With the ignition in ACC/ ACCESSORY or ON/RUN, or when in RAP, close all doors.
2. Press and hold the power window switch until the window is fully open.
3. Pull the power window switch up until the window is fully closed.
4. Continue holding the switch up for approximately 2 seconds after the window is completely closed.

The window is now reprogrammed.

Express Window Anti-Pinch Feature

If any object is in the path of the window when express-up is active, the window stops at the obstruction and auto-reverses to a preset factory position. Weather conditions such as severe icing may also cause the window to auto-reverse. The window returns to normal operation once the obstruction or condition is removed.

Express Window Anti-Pinch Override

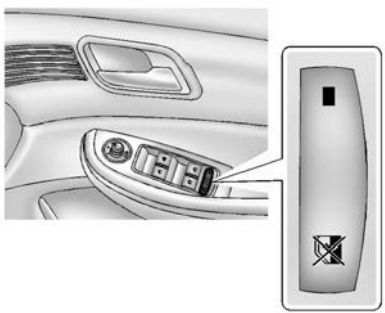
⚠ Warning

If express override is activated, the window will not reverse automatically. You or others could be injured and the window could be damaged. Before you use express override, make sure that all people and obstructions are clear of the window path.

In an emergency, the anti-pinch feature can be overridden in a supervised mode. Hold the window switch all the way up to the second position. The window rises for as long as the switch is held. Once the switch is released, the express mode is reactivated.

In this mode, the window can still close on an object in its path. Use care when using the override mode.

Window Lockout

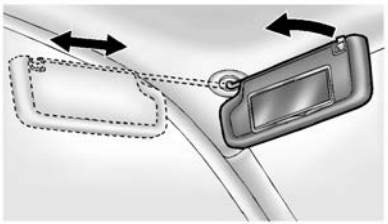


This feature prevents the rear passenger windows from operating, except from the driver position.

Press to activate the window lockout. The indicator light in the switch will illuminate.

Press again to deactivate the window lockout.

Sun Visors



Pull the sun visor down to block glare. Detach the sun visor from the centre mount to pivot to the side window, or to extend along the rod, if available.

The vehicle may have mirror lamps. The lamps turn on and off when the cover is opened and closed.

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
Head Restraints 3-2

Front Seats
Seat Adjustment 3-3
Power Seat Adjustment 3-4
Lumbar Adjustment 3-4
Reclining Seatbacks 3-5
Heated Front Seats 3-6

Rear Seats
Rear Seats 3-7
Rear Seat Armrest 3-9

Seat Belts
Seat Belts 3-9
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 3-11
Lap-Shoulder Belt 3-11
Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy 3-14
Safety System Check 3-14
Seat Belt Care 3-14
Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash 3-15

Airbag System
Airbag System 3-15
Where Are the Airbags? 3-18
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 3-19
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 3-20
How Does an Airbag Restrain? 3-20
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 3-20
Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 3-22
Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle . . . 3-22
Airbag System Check 3-22
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 3-23

Child Restraints
Older Children 3-23
Infants and Young Children 3-25
Child Restraint Systems 3-27
Where to Put the Restraint . . . 3-30
Top Tether Anchor Fittings . . . 3-31
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 3-35
Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat) 3-35
Securing Child Restraints (Front Passenger Seat) 3-36

Head Restraints

⚠ Warning

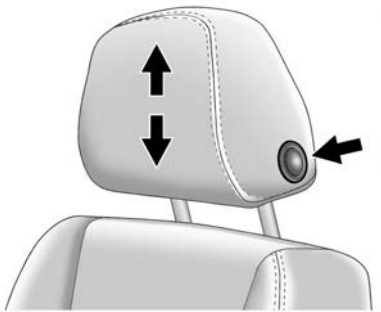
This safety feature is not intended to rest the head upon. It is solely for the reduction of whiplash neck movement in an accident involving your vehicle.

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

Front Seats

The vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints.



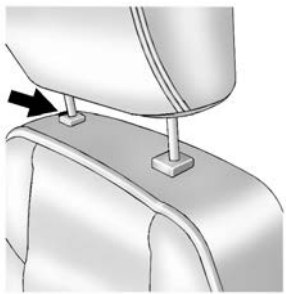
To raise or lower the head restraint, press the button located on the side of the head restraint and pull up or push the head restraint down and release the button.

Pull and push on the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

The front seat head restraints are not designed to be removed.

Rear Seats

The vehicle's rear seat has adjustable head restraints in all three seating positions.



The height of the head restraint can be adjusted. Pull the head restraint up to raise it. Try to move the head restraint to make sure that it is locked in place.

To lower the head restraint, press the button, and push the head restraint down. Try to move the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

Rear head restraints are not designed to be removed.

Front Seats

Seat Adjustment

⚠ Warning

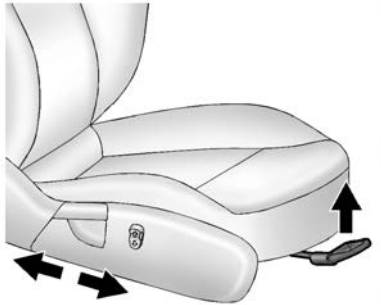
Do not adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is moving as the seat could move suddenly causing the driver to lose control.

⚠ Warning

Do not fit unauthorised seat covers, unauthorised seat covers may impair the operation of the side impact airbags (SIAB).

Always sit centrally in the seat.

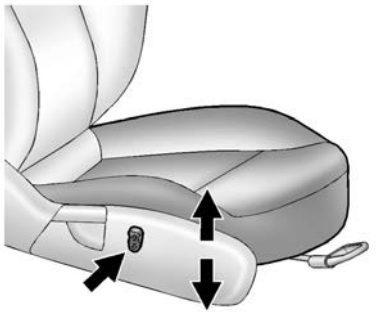
Do not place any object between the seat and the door. See *Airbag System on page 3-15*



To adjust a manual seat:

1. Pull the handle at the front of the seat.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the handle.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to be sure it is locked in place.

Seat Height Adjuster

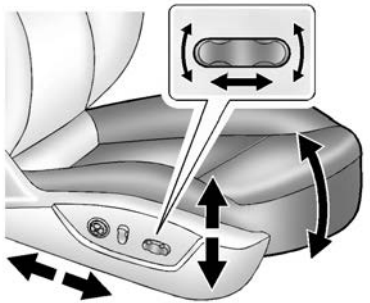


If available, press and hold the top or bottom of the switch to raise or lower the seat. Release the switch when the desired height is reached.

Power Seat Adjustment

⚠ Warning

Before moving the seat ensure that the path both in front of and behind the seat is clear of obstructions.

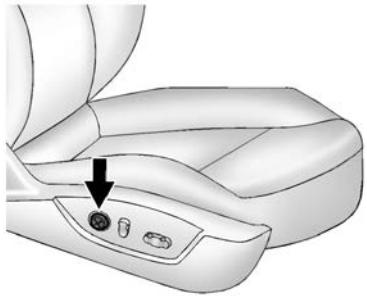


To adjust a power seat, if equipped:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the entire control up or down.

To adjust the seatback, see *Reclining Seatbacks on page 3-5*.

Lumbar Adjustment



To adjust the lumbar support, if available:

- Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or decrease lumbar support.
- Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the height of the lumbar support.

Reclining Seatbacks

⚠ Warning

To avoid reducing the effectiveness of seat belts, seatbacks should only be upright or at most semi-reclined when the vehicle is moving.

The shoulder belt will not be against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

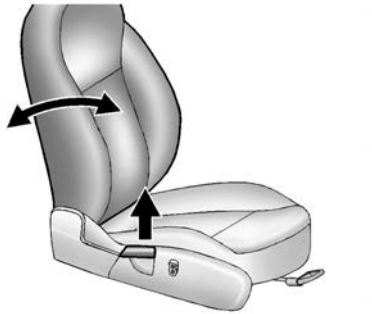
For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear the seat belt properly.

Do not have a seatback reclined if the vehicle is moving.

Manual Reclining Seatbacks

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.



To recline a manual seatback:

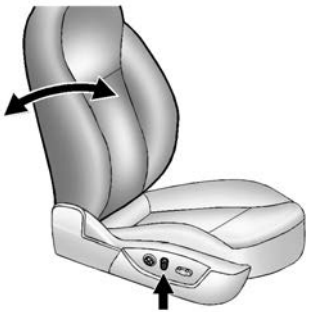
1. Lift the lever.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, and then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback, and the seatback will return to the upright position.

2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Power Reclining Seatbacks



To adjust a power seatback, if available:

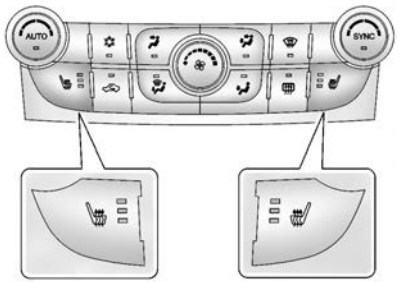
- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

Heated Front Seats

⚠ Warning

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.

Do not fit any seat cover (including genuine Holden accessory covers) to heated seats.



If available, the buttons are on the climate control panel. To operate, the engine must be running.

Press or to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback. Indicator lights on the button show the current setting.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the heated seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The lights indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

The passenger seat may take longer to heat up.

Rear Seats

Folding the Seatback

⚠ Warning

Do not press the release button on the top of the seatback while the vehicle is moving. This could cause damage or injuries to the occupants.

Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seatbacks while the vehicle is in motion. Unrestrained luggage or passengers on a folded seatback could be thrown within or ejected from the vehicle in a sudden stop or accident.

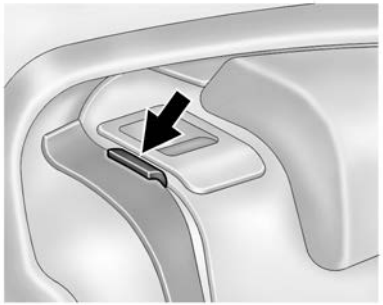
Either side of the seatback can be folded down for more cargo space. Fold a seatback only when the vehicle is not moving.

⚠ Caution

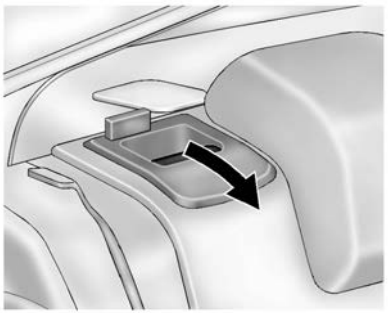
Do not trap the seat belt when returning the seatback or seat section to the upright position.

To fold the seatback down:

1. Lower the rear seat head restraints completely. See *Head Restraints on page 3-2*.
2. Lift the rear seat armrest and place it in the folded position, if necessary. See *Rear Seat Armrest on page 3-9*.



3. Place the outboard seat belt in the retainer clip.



4. Pull the lever on the top of the seatback to unlock it.

   A tab near the seatback lever raises when the seatback is unlocked.

5. Fold the seatback down.

   Repeat the steps for the other seatback, if desired.

Raising the Seatback

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

⚠ Warning

A seat belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the seat belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

To raise a seatback:

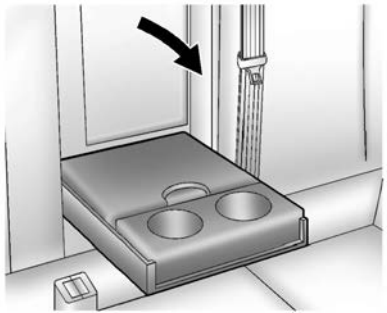
1. Lift the seatback up and push it rearward to lock it in place. Make sure the seat belt is in the retainer clip and is not twisted or caught in the seatback.

   A tab near the seatback lever retracts when the seatback is locked in place.

   The centre rear seat belt may lock when you raise the seatback. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again.
2. Push and pull the top of the seatback to be sure it is locked into position.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 for the other seatback, if necessary.

When the seat is not in use, it should be kept in the upright, locked position.

Rear Seat Armrest



The rear seat has an armrest in the centre of the seatback. Lower the armrest to access the two cupholders and the storage area.

To fold, lift the armrest up and push it rearward until it is flush with the seatback.

Seat Belts

This section of the manual describes how to use seat belts properly. It also describes some things not to do with seat belts.

⚠ Warning

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the seat belts. See *Seat Belt Reminders on page 5-9*.

Why Seat Belts Work

When riding in a vehicle, you travel as fast as the vehicle does. If the vehicle stops suddenly, you keep going until something stops you. It could be the windscreen, the instrument panel, or the seat belts!

When you wear a seat belt, you and the vehicle slow down together. There is more time to stop because you stop over a longer distance and, when worn properly, your strongest bones take the forces from the seat belts. That is why wearing seat belts makes such good sense.

Questions and Answers About Seat Belts

Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a seat belt?

A: You *could* be — whether you are wearing a seat belt or not. Your chance of being conscious during and after a crash, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are wearing a seat belt.

Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear seat belts?

A: Airbags are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* seat belts — not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag

is provided, all occupants still have to wear seat belts to get the most protection.

Also, the law requires wearing seat belts.

How to Wear Seat Belts Properly

This section is only for people of adult size.

There are special things to know about seat belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle, see *Older Children on page 3-23* or *Infants and Young Children on page 3-25*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

It is very important for all occupants to wear a seat belt. Statistics show that people who are not wearing a seat belt are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing seat belts.

There are important things to know about wearing a seat belt properly.

- Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you.
- Wear the shoulder belt over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces. The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

⚠ Danger

Wear the lap part of the belt low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.

⚠ Danger

You can be seriously injured, or even killed, by not wearing your seat belt properly.

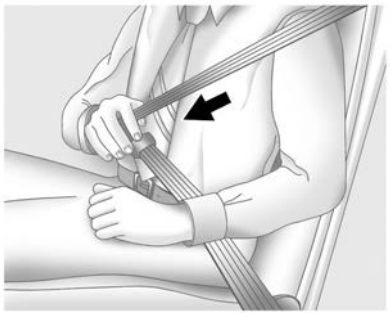
- Never allow the lap or shoulder belt to become loose or twisted.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under both arms or behind your back.
- Never route the lap or shoulder belt over an armrest.

Lap-Shoulder Belt

All seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt.

The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

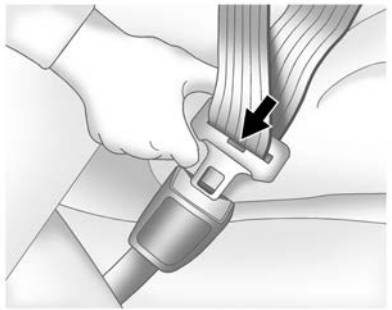
1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.



2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

   The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

   If the webbing locks in the latch plate before it reaches the buckle, tilt the latch plate flat to unlock.

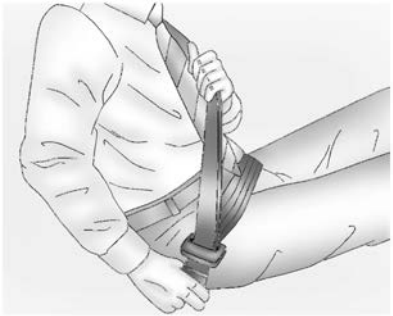


3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the seat belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

   If equipped with a shoulder belt height adjuster, move it to the height that is right for you. See “Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster” later in this section for instructions on use and important safety information.



4. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

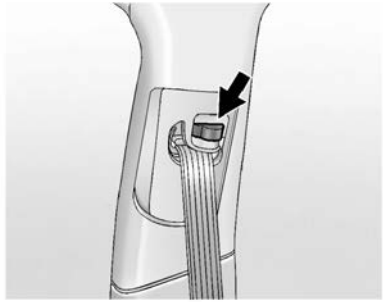
To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position.

Before a door is closed, be sure the seat belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a seat belt, damage can occur to both the seat belt and the vehicle.

Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster

The vehicle has a shoulder belt height adjuster for the driver and front passenger seating positions.

Adjust the height so the shoulder portion of the belt is on the shoulder and not falling off of it. The belt should be close to, but not contacting, the neck. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in a crash. See *How to Wear Seat Belts Properly on page 3-11*.



Press the release button and move the height adjuster to the desired position. The adjuster can be moved up by pushing the slide/trim up. After the adjuster is set to the desired position, try to move it down without pushing the release button to make sure it has locked into position.

Seat Belt Pretensioners

This vehicle has seat belt pretensioners for front outboard occupants. Although the seat belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they are part of the seat belt assembly.

They can help tighten the safety belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal, near-frontal, or rear crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met. And if the vehicle has side impact airbags, safety belt pretensioners can help tighten the safety belts in a side crash.

Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners activate in a crash, the pretensioners and other parts of the vehicle's seat belt system will need to be replaced. See *Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash on page 3-15*.

Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy

Seat belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear a seat belt.

A pregnant woman should wear a three-point belt with the lap portion of the belt worn as low as possible below the rounding of their stomach throughout the pregnancy.

Safety System Check

Now and then, check that the seat belt reminder light, seat belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchorages are all working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged seat belt system parts that might keep a seat belt system from doing its job. See your dealer to have it repaired. Torn or frayed seat belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, contact a Holden dealer immediately.

Make sure the seat belt reminder light is working. See *Seat Belt Reminders on page 5-9*.

Keep seat belts clean and dry. See *Seat Belt Care on page 3-14*.

Seat Belt Care

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ Warning

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

After a minor crash, replacement of seat belts may not be necessary. But the seat belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your dealer to have the seat belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the seat belt system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Have the seat belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, or if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-10*.

⚠ Warning

Safety procedures must always be observed when disposing of the vehicle or vehicle parts. Disposal should only be performed by an authorised service centre, to help protect the environment and your health.

Airbag System

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats. See *Child Restraint Systems on page 3-27*.

⚠ Warning

Airbags are part of the supplemental restraint system (SRS) as they assist, but do not replace seat belts. Airbags do not deploy in every accident. Various factors dictate whether they deploy including speed, angle of collision and object hit. Airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is hit from the rear or is involved in a rollover. Seat belts must be worn by all passengers whenever the vehicle is moving.

Airbags inflate with great force. If you are too close to an inflating airbag it may cause injury. Seat belts help keep you in position for airbag inflation in the event of a collision.

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver.
- A frontal airbag for the front passenger.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the front passenger.
- A curtain airbag for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver.
- A curtain airbag for the front passenger and the passenger seated directly behind the front passenger.

All vehicle airbags have the word AIRBAG on the trim or on a label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the centre of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the front passenger.

For seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the side of the seatback closest to the door.

For curtain airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the B-pillar.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by seat belts. Even though airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

⚠ Danger

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your seat belt, even with airbags. Airbags are designed to work with seat belts, not replace them. Also, airbags are not designed to inflate in every crash. In some crashes seat belts are the only restraint. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 3-19*.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

Wearing your seat belt during a crash helps reduce the chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are “supplemental restraints” to the seat belts. Everyone in the vehicle should wear a seat belt properly, whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ Danger

Because airbags inflate with great force and faster than the blink of an eye, anyone who is up against, or very close to any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to any airbag, as you would be if sitting on the edge of the seat or leaning forward. Seat belts help keep you

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

in position before and during a crash. Always wear a seat belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with seat-mounted side impact airbags and/or curtain airbags.

⚠ Danger

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

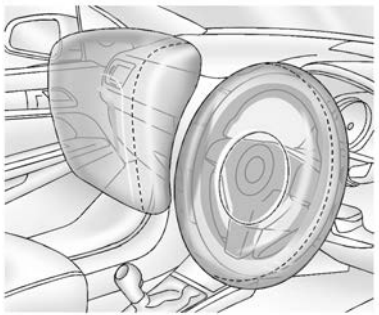
Neither the vehicle's seat belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in the vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children on page 3-23* or *Infants and Young Children on page 3-25*.

There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument cluster, which shows the airbag symbol. The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light

tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-10*.

Where Are the Airbags?

Front Airbag System



The driver frontal airbag is in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front passenger airbag is in the passenger side instrument panel above the glovebox.

⚠ Warning

The horn pad must not be covered with adhesive or any other material.

The driver should adjust the seat as far rearward as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

The wording **AIRBAG** above the glove box and a label attached under the sun visor indicate that a passenger airbag is fitted.

⚠ Warning

Do not place any objects on or over the dashboard or between an airbag and yourself.

Do not hang anything from the sun visor or mirror.

Passengers must not rest their feet on the dashboard.

Side Airbag System

⚠ Warning

Do not fit unauthorised seat covers as they may impair the deployment of the Side Impact Airbags (SIAB).

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) between front seats and doors.

Do not lean on, or sleep against, the door. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

The seat-mounted side impact airbags for the driver and front passenger are in the side of the seatbacks closest to the door.

Curtain Airbag System

⚠ Warning

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) in the area in which the airbag inflates.

There must be no objects in the area in which the airbag inflates. Refer to the illustration.

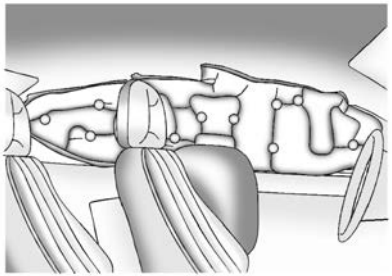
Use the hooks above the doors only to hang up light articles of clothing.

Do not place any objects in the pockets of the hanging items.

Do not hold onto the assist grips (above the doors) while seated in the vehicle.

Do not lean on, or sleep against the front or rear doors. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.



The curtain airbags for the driver, front passenger, and rear seat outboard passengers are in the ceiling above the side windows.

When Should an Airbag Inflate?

This vehicle is equipped with airbags. See *Airbag System on page 3-15*. Airbags are designed to inflate if the impact exceeds the specific airbag system's deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants. The vehicle has electronic frontal sensors that help the airbag system determine the severity of the impact. Deployment thresholds can vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries, mainly to the driver's or front outboard passenger's head and chest.

Whether the frontal airbags will or should inflate is not based primarily on how fast the vehicle is travelling. It depends on what is hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds depending on whether the vehicle hits an object straight on or at an angle, and whether the object is fixed or moving, rigid or deformable, narrow or wide.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, in rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

In addition, the vehicle has advanced technology frontal airbags. Advanced technology frontal airbags adjust the restraint according to crash severity.

Seat-mounted side impact airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes, depending on the location of the impact. Seat-mounted side impact airbags are not designed to inflate in frontal impacts, near-frontal impacts, rollovers, or rear impacts.
A seat-mounted side impact airbag is designed to inflate on the side of the vehicle that is struck.

Curtain airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes, depending on the location of the impact. Curtain airbags are not designed to inflate in frontal, near-frontal, rollovers, or rear impacts. A curtain airbag is intended to inflate on the side of the vehicle that is struck.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the vehicle damage or repair costs.

What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

For airbag locations, see *Where Are the Airbags? on page 3-18*.

How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even occupants fastened with a seat belt can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even occupants fastened with a seat belt can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by seat belts by distributing the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's body.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate? on page 3-19*.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to seat belts.

What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

After the frontal airbags and seat-mounted side impact airbags inflate, they quickly deflate. So

quickly that some people may not even realise an airbag inflated. Curtain airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after they inflate. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. For location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags? on page 3-18*.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windscreen or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

The vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn on the interior lamps, turn on the hazard warning flashers, and shut off the fuel system after the airbags inflate. You can lock the doors, turn off the interior lamps, and turn off the hazard warning flashers by using the controls for those features.

⚠ Warning

A crash severe enough to inflate the airbags may have also damaged important functions in the vehicle, such as the fuel system, brake and steering systems, etc. Even if the vehicle appears to be drivable after a moderate crash, there may be concealed damage that could make it difficult to safely operate the vehicle.

Use caution if you should attempt to restart the engine after a crash has occurred.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windscreens are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windscreen breakage may also occur from the front passenger airbag.

- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See your dealer for service.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer for service.

Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around the vehicle. Your dealer has information about servicing the vehicle and the airbag system.

⚠ Warning

For up to 10 seconds after the vehicle is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Adding accessories that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly.

The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing or moving any parts of the front seats, seat belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, curtain airbag modules, ceiling headliner or pillar garnish trim, overhead console, front sensors, side impact sensors, or airbag wiring.

Airbag System Check

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-10*.

⚠ Caution

If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag coverings, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

replaced. For the location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags? on page 3-18*. See your dealer for service.

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Danger

A crash can damage the airbag systems in the vehicle.
A damaged airbag system may not work properly and may not protect you and your passenger(s) in a crash, resulting in serious injury or even death. To help make sure the airbag systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See your dealer for service.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on when you are driving, the airbag system may not work properly. Have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 5-10*.

Child Restraints

Older Children

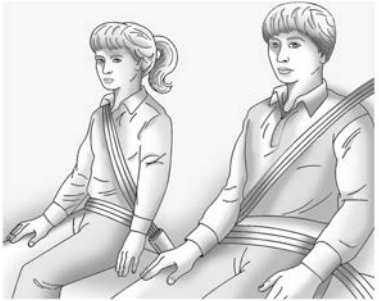
⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle seat belts.

The manufacturer instructions that come with the booster seat state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the fit test below:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Can proper seat belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

⚠ Danger

An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

In a crash, children who are not wearing a seat belt can strike other people who are wearing a seat belt, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use seat belts properly.

⚠ Warning

Never allow more than one child to wear the same seat belt. The seat belt cannot properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, they

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

can be crushed together and seriously injured. A seat belt must be used by only one person at a time.

⚠ Danger

Never allow a child to wear the seat belt with the shoulder belt behind their back. A child can be

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The child might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance travelled nor the age and size of the traveller changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints.

⚠ Danger

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the seat belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the seat belts.

Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's seat belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints.

Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

⚠ Danger

Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h, a 5.5 kg infant will suddenly become a 110 kg force on a person's arms. An infant should be secured in an appropriate restraint.

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in your vehicle.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions should state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint.

⚠ Warning

To reduce the risk of neck and head injury during a crash, infants need complete support. In a crash, if an infant is in a rear-facing child restraint, the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

shoulders. Infants should always be secured in rear-facing child restraints.

⚠ Danger

A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular seat belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

Child Restraint Systems

We recommend a child restraint system that is tailored specifically to the vehicle.

When a child restraint system is being used, pay attention to the following usage and installation instructions and also those supplied with the child restraint system.

Always comply with local or national regulations.

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

⚠ Warning

This manual provides you with general information concerning child restraints only. The driver is required by law to ensure that passengers are suitably restrained.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

In most States and Territories of Australia and New Zealand, specific laws may exist which require children to be seated in approved child restraints. Holden strongly recommends that you refer to your specific State or Territory regulations to determine which child restraint is suitable for your child.

Children should be restrained at all times when travelling in a vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Always ensure that the seat belt fits firmly around the child restraint.

If a child cannot see out of the window, do not raise him/her by means of an ordinary cushion.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

It will not stay in place in a collision and the child can slip out of the straps and become entangled.

⚠ Warning

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Only child restraints that have clips to attach to the vehicle's anchorage fitting (as shown in the following illustrations) are to be

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

used. Earlier types of child restraints may not attach securely to this type of anchor.

Use only Standards Australia and New Zealand approved child restraints and harnesses. Only purchase a child restraint which carries the appropriate Standards Australia sticker of approval.

Where legally allowable, you may install a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, but always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go. The forward facing child restraint must still be attached to the passenger side child restraint anchorage point, located behind the rear seat.

Remember, it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seat.

Selecting the Right System

The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system. Infants should travel facing rearwards in the vehicle as long as possible. This makes sure that the child's backbone, which is still very weak, is under less strain in the event of an accident.

Ensure that the child restraint system to be installed is compatible with the vehicle type.

Ensure that the mounting location of the child restraint system within the vehicle is correct.

Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.

When the child restraint system is not in use, secure the seat with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.

Note: Do not stick anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials.

A child restraint system that has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

Infants

Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

Young children

Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

Booster seats

Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

Older children

A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the rear seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat.
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach.
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest.
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip.

Where to Put the Restraint

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with your child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Child restraints and booster seats vary considerably in size, and some may fit in certain seating positions better than others. Always make sure the child restraint is properly secured.

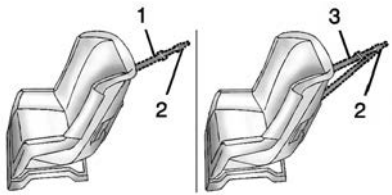
Depending on where you place the child restraint and the size of the child restraint, you may not be able to access adjacent seat belt assemblies or top tether anchor fittings for additional passengers or child restraints. Adjacent seating positions should not be used if the child restraint prevents access to or interferes with the routing of the seat belt. See *Top Tether Anchor Fittings on page 3-31*.

Top Tether Anchor Fittings

In order to use the top tether anchor fittings in the vehicle, you need a child restraint that has a top tether. The child restraint manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the child restraint and its attachments. The following explains how to attach a child restraint with a top tether in the vehicle.

Make sure that a top tether-compatible child restraint is properly installed using the top tether anchor fittings, or use the vehicle's seat belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual. When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use the seat belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be installed using only the top tether.

Top Tether Anchor Fittings



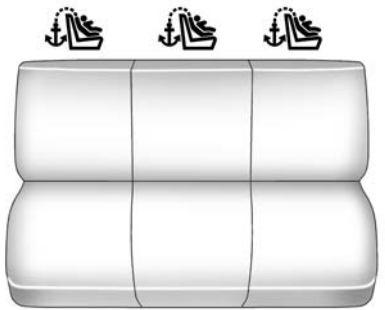
A top tether (1, 3) secures the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor fitting is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment (2) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor fitting in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in an accident.

The child restraint may have a single tether (1) or a dual tether (3). Either will have a single attachment (2) to secure the top tether to the anchor fitting.

⚠ Warning

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

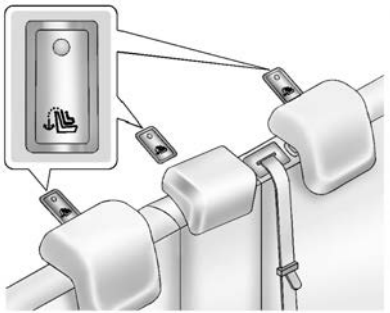
Top Tether Anchor Fitting Locations



Rear Seat

(Top Tether Anchor Fitting): Seating positions with top tether anchor fittings.

To assist in locating the top tether anchor fittings, the top tether anchor fitting symbol is on the cover.



Top Tether Anchor Fittings

The top tether anchor fittings are under the covers, behind the rear seat, on the filler panel. Be sure to use an anchor fitting on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor fitting.

⚠ Warning

Accident statistics show that children are safer when properly secured in a rear seat in the correct child restraint for their weight and size. Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

Securing a Child Restraint Using Top Tether Anchor Fittings

⚠ Danger

If a top tether-equipped child restraint is not attached to an anchor fitting, the child restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Install a top tether-equipped child restraint properly using the anchor fitting, or use the vehicle's seat belts to

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

secure the restraint following the instructions that came with the child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

⚠ Danger

Do not attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor fitting. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor fitting could cause the anchor fitting or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, attach only one child restraint per anchor fitting.

⚠ Danger

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the seat belt continues to tighten. Buckle any unused seat belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, if the vehicle has one, after the child restraint has been installed.

⚠ Caution

Do not let the top tether attachments rub against the vehicle's seat belts. This may damage these parts. If necessary, move buckled seat belts to avoid rubbing the top tether attachments.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Do not fold the empty rear seat with a seat belt buckled. This could damage the seat belt or the seat. Unbuckle and return the seat belt to its stowed position, before folding the seat.

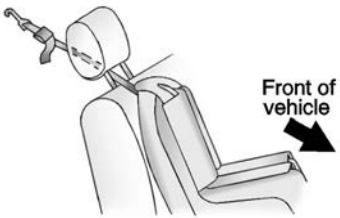
Make sure to attach the child restraint at the proper anchor fitting location.

1. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach the top tether to the top tether anchor fitting. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:

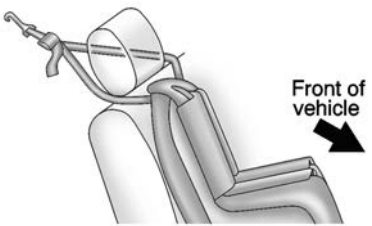
   1.1. Find the top tether anchor fitting.

   Open the cover to expose the anchor fitting.

1.2. Route, attach, and tighten the top tether according to the child restraint instructions and the following instructions:



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and in between the headrest or head restraint posts.



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether route the tether around the headrest or head restraint.

2. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions.

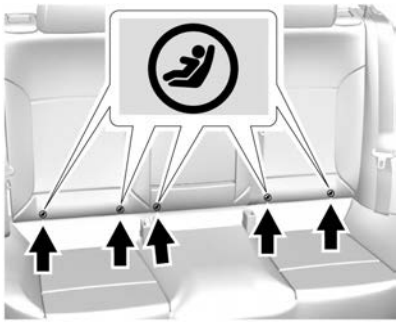
Replacing Restraint System Parts After an Accident

If the top tether anchor fittings were used during an accident, new anchor fittings may be needed.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the top tether anchor fittings were not being used at the time of the accident.

See your dealer for service.

ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems



Fasten vehicle-approved child restraint systems to the ISOFIX mounting brackets

Note: Ensure that seat belt buckles are placed out of the way of the child seat. ISOFIX mounting brackets are indicated by a label on the seatback. See illustration.

In addition to the ISOFIX mounting, fasten the top tether straps to the top tether anchorage points. See *Top Tether Anchor Fittings on page 3-31*.

Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat)

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If the child restraint has a top tether, see *Top Tether Anchor Fittings on page 3-31* for how and where to install the child restraint using Top Tether Anchor Fittings.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether anchor fittings must be anchored.

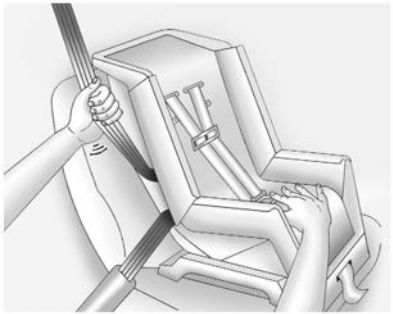
Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

If more than one child restraint needs to be installed in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-30*.

1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's seat belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the seat belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



4. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
5. If the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Top Tether Anchor Fittings on page 3-31* for more information.
6. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle seat belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor fitting, disconnect it.

Securing Child Restraints (Front Passenger Seat)

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 3-30*.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

⚠ Danger

A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position. Where legally allowable, you may install a forward-facing child restraint in the front passenger seat, but always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go. The forward facing child restraint must still be attached to the passenger side child restraint anchorage points, located behind the rear seat. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

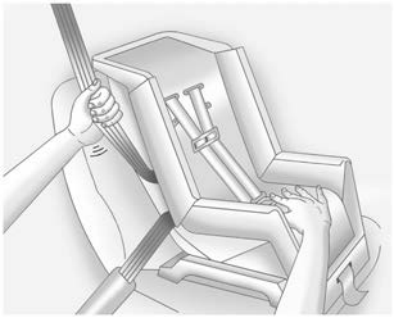
If the child restraint has a top tether, see *Top Tether Anchor Fittings on page 3-31* for how and where to install the child restraint using a top tether. If a child restraint is secured using a seat belt and it uses a top tether, see *Top Tether Anchor Fittings on page 3-31* for top tether anchor locations.

You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint.
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's seat belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the seat belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
6. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle seat belt and let it return to the stowed position. If a top tether is attached to the top tether anchor fitting, disconnect it.

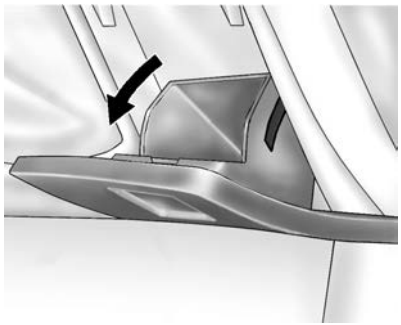
Storage

Storage Compartments
Instrument Panel Storage 4-1
Glovebox 4-1
Cupholders 4-2
Sunglasses Storage 4-2
Centre Console Storage 4-3

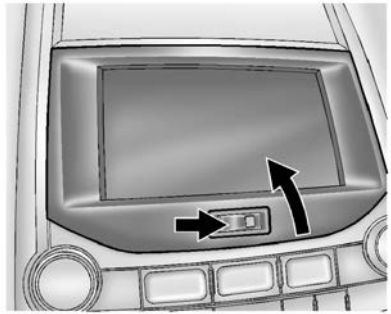
Additional Storage Features
Cargo Tie-Downs 4-3

Storage Compartments

Instrument Panel Storage



Lift the handle to access.



The vehicle may have a storage area behind the radio display. Push the button to the right and release; the door automatically opens.

Keep the storage area closed when not in use.

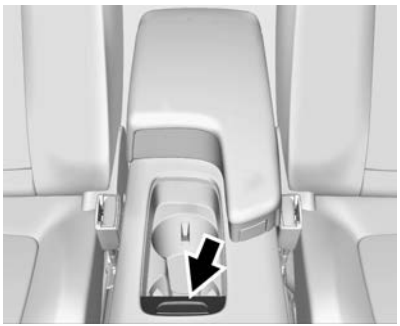
Push the door down to close.

Glovebox

Lift the handle to open.

Cupholders

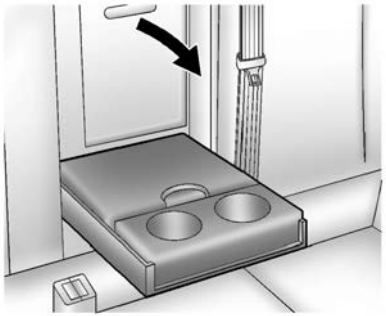
Centre Console



Push the handle and slide the cover forward to access the cupholders.

The cupholders can be removed for cleaning.

Rear Seat

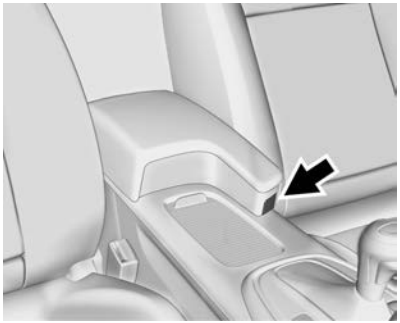


Lower the armrest to access the cupholders. There is also storage in the armrest; lift the lid to access.

Sunglasses Storage

Push on the cover and release to open the compartment.

Centre Console Storage



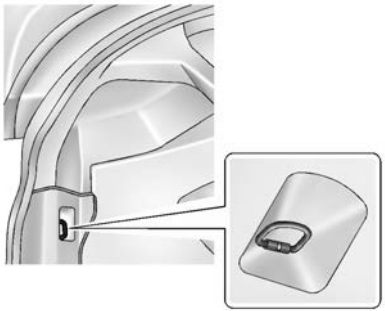
Press the button and lift to open.

The centre console has storage under the armrest. There is a USB port and a power outlet inside. See *Power Outlets on page 5-5*.

The vehicle may have removable cupholders with storage under them. See *Cupholders on page 4-2*.

Additional Storage Features

Cargo Tie-Downs



There are cargo tie-downs in the boot. The cargo tie-downs can be used to secure small loads.

✍ NOTES

Instructions and Controls

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment ... 5-2
Steering Wheel Controls 5-2
Horn 5-3
Windscreen Wiper/Washer 5-3
Clock 5-5
Power Outlets 5-5

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 5-6
Instrument Cluster 5-7
Speedometer 5-8
Odometer 5-8
Trip Odometer 5-8
Tachometer 5-8
Fuel Gauge 5-8
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 5-9
Seat Belt Reminders 5-9
Airbag Readiness Light 5-10
Charging System Light 5-10
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 5-10
Service Vehicle Soon Light 5-11
Brake System Warning Light 5-12
Electric Parking Brake Light 5-12
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 5-13
Traction Off Light 5-13
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light 5-14
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/ Warning Light 5-14
Preheating Light 5-15
Diesel Particulate Filter Light 5-15
Engine Oil Pressure Light 5-15
Low Fuel Warning Light 5-16
Security Light 5-16
Reduced Engine Power Light 5-17
High-Beam On Light 5-17
Front Fog Lamp Light 5-17
Lamps On Reminder 5-17
Cruise Control Light 5-17
Door open warning light 5-18

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC) 5-18

Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages 5-21
Battery Voltage and Charging Messages 5-21
Brake System Messages 5-21
Cruise Control Messages 5-22
Door open messages 5-22
Engine Cooling System Messages 5-22
Engine Oil Messages 5-23
Engine Power Messages 5-23
Fuel System Messages 5-24
Diesel Particulate Filter Messages 5-24
Key and Lock Messages 5-24
Lamp Messages 5-24
Object Detection System Messages 5-25
Ride Control System Messages 5-25
Service Vehicle Messages ... 5-25

Starting the Vehicle Messages 5-26
Transmission Messages 5-26
Vehicle Reminder Messages 5-26
Washer Fluid Messages 5-26
Window Messages 5-26

Vehicle Personalisation
Vehicle Personalisation 5-27

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment

To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Push the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Steering Wheel Controls

Some audio functions can be controlled through the steering wheel controls.

/ (Phone): Press to interact with Bluetooth. See *Bluetooth on page 7-61*.

/ (Mute/End Call): Press to decline an incoming call, or to end a current call. Press to silence the

vehicle speakers while using the infotainment system. Press again to turn the sound on.

△ SRC ▽ (Thumbwheel Control): Press to select an audio source.

Use the thumbwheel to select the next or previous favourite radio station, CD track, MP3 track, USB track, and Bluetooth Audio track.

Use △ SRC to skip to the next song or show using Pandora or Stitcher. See *Pandora Internet Radio on page 7-16* or *Stitcher Internet Radio on page 7-21*.

+ ▷ − (Volume): Press + to increase the volume. Press − to decrease.

Horn

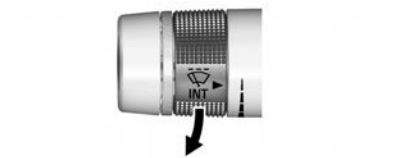
Press on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

Windscreen Wiper/ Washer

With the ignition in ACC/ ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, move the windscreen wiper lever to select the wiper speed.

(Mist): For a single wipe, briefly move the lever up. For several wipes, hold the lever up.

OFF: Use to turn the wipers off.



INT: (Intermittent Wipes): Move the lever down to INT for intermittent wipes, then turn the ▶ INT band down for more frequent wipes or up for less frequent wipes.

LO: Use for slow wipes.

HI: Use for fast wipes.

Clear snow and ice from the wiper blades and windscreen before using them. If frozen to the windscreen, carefully loosen or thaw them. Damaged blades should be replaced.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wiper motor.

Wiper Parking

If the ignition is put in OFF while the wipers are on LO, HI, or INT, they will immediately stop.

If the windscreen wiper lever is then moved to OFF before the driver door is opened or within 10 minutes, the wipers will restart and move to the base of the windscreen.

If the ignition is put in OFF while the wipers are performing wipes due to windscreen washing, the wipers continue to run until they reach the base of the windscreen.

Rainsense™

If equipped with Rainsense, a sensor near the top centre of the windscreen detects the amount of water on the windscreen and controls the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

Keep this area of the windscreen clear of debris to allow for best system performance.

INT (Rainsense Wipe Sensitivity Control): Move the windscreen wiper lever to INT. Turn the ▶ INT band on the wiper lever to adjust the sensitivity.

- Turn the band down for more sensitivity to moisture.
- Turn the band up for less sensitivity to moisture.
- Move the windscreen wiper lever out of the INT position to deactivate Rainsense.

Wiper Arm Assembly Protection

When using an automatic car wash, move the windscreen wiper lever to OFF. This disables the automatic Rainsense windscreen wipers.

With Rainsense, if the transmission is in N (Neutral) and the vehicle speed is very slow, the wipers will automatically stop at the base of the windscreen.

The wiper operations return to normal when the transmission is no longer in N (Neutral) or the vehicle speed has increased.

↓ **(Windscreen Washer):** Pull the windscreen wiper lever toward you to spray windscreen washer fluid and activate the wipers. The wipers will continue until the lever is released or the maximum wash time is reached. When the windscreen wiper lever is released, additional wipes may occur depending on how long the windscreen washer had been activated. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-18* for information on filling the windscreen washer fluid reservoir.

⚠ Warning

In freezing weather, do not use the washer until the windscreen is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windscreen, blocking your vision.

Clock

The infotainment system controls are used to access the time and date settings through the menu system. See *Using the System on page 7-7* for information about how to use the menu system.

Setting the Time and Date:

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Rotate the MENU/TUNE knob to select Time and Date.
3. Select Set Time or Set Date.
4. Rotate the MENU/TUNE knob to adjust the highlighted value.
5. Press the MENU/TUNE knob to select the next value.
6. To save the time or date and return to the Time and Date Settings menu, press the ⇦ BACK button at any time or press the MENU/TUNE knob after adjusting the minutes or year.

Setting the 12/24 Hour Format:

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Rotate the MENU/TUNE knob to select Time and Date.
3. Highlight 12/24 Hour Format.
4. Press the MENU/TUNE knob to select the 12 hour or 24 hour display format.

Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a mobile phone or MP3 player.

There are two accessory power outlets: one on the centre stack below the climate control system, and one under the armrest inside the centre console storage.

The outlet is powered when the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ ACCESSORY, or until the driver door is opened within 10 minutes of turning off the vehicle. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-5*.

Open the protective cover to use the accessory power outlet.

Certain electrical accessories may not be compatible with the accessory power outlets and could overload vehicle or adapter fuses. If there is a problem, see your dealer.

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the installation instructions included with the equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment on page 9-34*.

⚠ Caution

Hanging heavy equipment from the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. The power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only, such as mobile phone charge cords.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

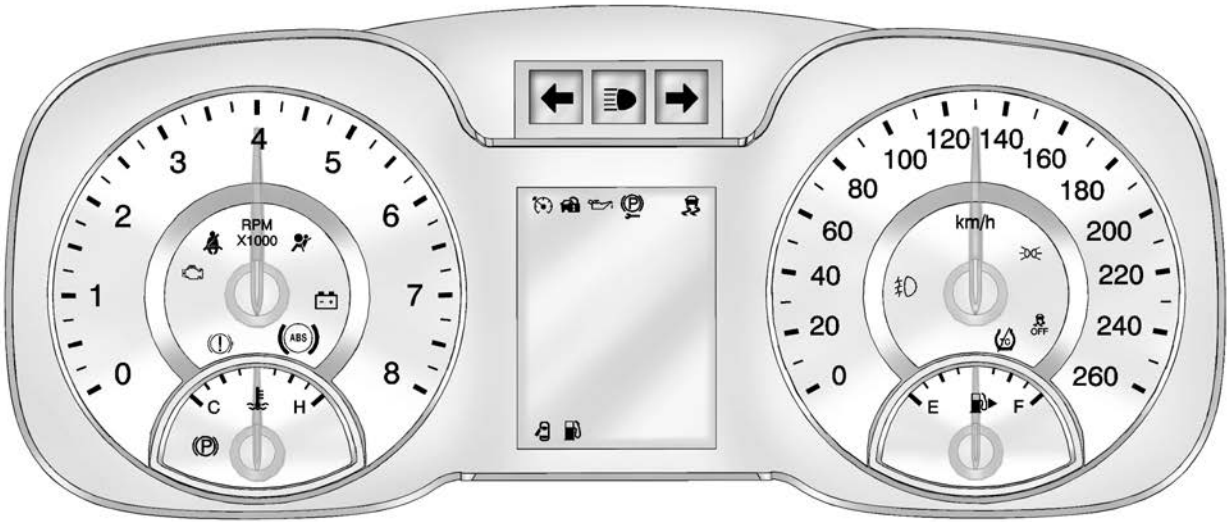
Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

Warning lights come on when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working.

Gauges can indicate when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Often gauges and warning lights work together to indicate a problem with the vehicle.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

Instrument Cluster



Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in kilometres per hour (km/h).

Odometer

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven in kilometres.

Trip Odometer

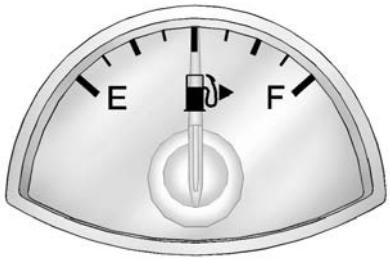
The trip odometer can show how far the vehicle has been driven since the trip odometer was last reset.

The trip odometer is accessed and reset through the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-18*.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

Fuel Gauge

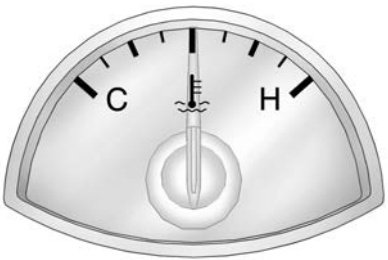


When the ignition is on, the fuel gauge shows how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. When the indicator nears empty, a message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) displays. See *Fuel System Messages on page 5-24*. The vehicle still has a little fuel left, but the vehicle should be fuelled soon. An arrow on the fuel gauge indicates the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

Here are four things that some owners ask about. These are normal and do not indicate a problem with the fuel gauge:

- At the petrol station, the petrol pump shuts off before the gauge reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the gauge indicated. For example, the gauge may have indicated the fuel tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the fuel tank's capacity to fill it.
- The indicator moves a little while turning a corner or speeding up.
- The gauge goes back to empty when the ignition is turned off.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



This gauge shows the engine coolant temperature.

If the indicator needle moves to the hot side of the gauge, the engine is too hot.

If the vehicle has been operated under normal driving conditions, pull off the road, stop the vehicle, and turn off the engine as soon as possible.

Seat Belt Reminders

Driver Seat Belt Reminder Light

There is a driver seat belt reminder light on the instrument cluster.

When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind the driver to fasten their seat belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is fastened. This cycle may continue several times if the driver remains or becomes unfastened while the vehicle is moving.

If the driver seat belt is fastened, neither the light nor the chime comes on.

Passenger Seat Belt Reminder Light

The vehicle may also have a passenger seat belt reminder light.

When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind passengers to fasten their seat belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is fastened.

This cycle continues several times if the front passenger remains or becomes unfastened while the vehicle is moving.

If the front passenger seat belt is fastened, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger seat belt warning light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such

as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the warning light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the seat belt.

Airbag Readiness Light

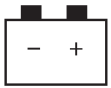
This light shows if there is an electrical problem with the airbag system. The system check includes the airbag sensor(s), the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring, and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System on page 3-15*.

The airbag readiness light comes on for several seconds when the vehicle is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

Charging System Light



This light comes on briefly when the ignition key is turned to START, but the engine is not running, as a check to show it is working.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

The light should go out once the engine starts. If it stays on, or comes on while driving, there could be a problem with the charging system. This light could indicate that there are problems with a generator drive belt, or that there is an electrical problem. Have it checked right away. If the vehicle must be driven a short distance with the light on, turn off accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

This light comes on when the ignition is turned on, as a check to show it is working. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on and stays on while the engine is running, this indicates that there is a problem and service is required.

⚠ Caution

If the vehicle is continually driven with this light on, the emission controls might not work as well, the vehicle fuel economy might not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This may lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of the vehicle can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

This light comes on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

Light Flashing: A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and could damage the emission control system on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

To prevent more serious damage to the vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard accelerations.
- Avoid steep uphill gradients.
- If the vehicle can tow a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, stop the vehicle. Find a safe place to park. Turn the vehicle off, wait at least 10 seconds, and restart the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Light On: An emission control system malfunction has been detected on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

The light remains on until the problem is repaired. Contact your dealer.

Service Vehicle Soon Light

This light may come on if a condition exists that may require the vehicle to be taken in for service.

If the light comes on, take the vehicle to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Brake System Warning Light

The vehicle brake system consists of two hydraulic circuits. If one circuit is not working, the remaining circuit can still work to stop the vehicle. For normal braking performance, both circuits need to be working.

If the warning light comes on, there is a brake problem. Have the brake system inspected right away.

The brake system warning light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

⚠ Warning

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

If the light comes on while driving, a chime sounds. Pull off the road and stop. The pedal might be harder to push or go closer to the floor. It might also take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Towing the Vehicle on page 10-56*.

Electric Parking Brake Light

This light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

The parking brake status light comes on when the brake is applied. If the light continues flashing after the parking brake is released, or while driving, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system. A SERVICE PARKING BRAKE message may also display in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Brake System Messages on page 5-21* for more information.

If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, see your dealer.

For vehicles with the EPB, the parking brake warning light should come on briefly when the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If this light comes on, there is a problem with a system on the vehicle that is causing the parking brake system to work at a reduced level. The vehicle can still be driven, but should be taken to a dealer as soon as possible. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-13* for more information.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then goes off.

If the ABS light stays on, turn the ignition off. If the light comes on while driving, stop as soon as it is safely possible and turn the ignition off. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the ABS light stays on, or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service. If the regular brake system warning light is not on, the vehicle still has brakes, but not antilock brakes. If the regular brake system warning light is also on, the vehicle does not have antilock brakes and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-12*.

See *Brake System Messages on page 5-21* for all brake-related DIC messages.

Traction Off Light

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then goes off.

This light comes on when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off by pressing and releasing the traction control button.

This light also comes on and the system turns off if there is a problem with the TCS.

If the light comes on and stays on for an extended period of time while the system is turned on, the vehicle needs service.

See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-16* and *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-18*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then goes off.

If the light comes on and stays on while driving, there could be a problem with the ESC and the vehicle might need service. When this warning light is on, the ESC is off and does not limit wheel spin.

The light flashes if the system is active and is working to assist the driver with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions.

See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-18* for more information.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light

This light comes on when the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is turned off. When the ESC is off the Traction Control System (TCS) is also off, and wheel spin is not limited. If the ESC is off, the system does not assist in controlling the vehicle. Switch on the TCS and the ESC, and the warning light turns off.

See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-16* and *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-18* for more information.

Preheating Light

For diesel engines, the preheating light shows that the engine is functioning properly and indicates when the engine can be started.

The fast warm-up glow plug system makes the preheating light stay on for a shorter amount of time than most diesel engines.

For more information, see *Starting the Engine on page 9-5*.

Diesel Particulate Filter Light

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This indicator comes on or flashes when the soot particles accumulated in the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) reach a certain amount.

The soot particles need to be burnt off to prevent the filter from clogging. When this indicator comes on or flashes, increase speed to more than 50 km/h for about 15 minutes as soon as the road and traffic situations permit. The indicator goes off as soon as the soot particles are at normal levels.

If the engine is shut off while the DPF indicator is on or flashing, increased fuel consumption and a reduction in engine oil life will occur. Continue the driving regeneration process above until the DPF indicator goes off.

See *Diesel Particulate Filter on page 9-8* for more information.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

⚠ Caution

Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. Driving with the engine oil low can also damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Check the oil level as soon as possible. Add oil if required, but if the oil level is within the operating range and the oil pressure is still low, have the vehicle serviced. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.

This light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and might have some other system problem. See your dealer.

Low Fuel Warning Light

This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If it does not come on have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then goes off.

This light also comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel. When fuel is added the light should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle serviced.

Security Light

The security light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light stays on and the engine does not start, there could be a problem with the theft-deterrent system.

This light is also used to indicate the status of the anti-theft alarm system when the ignition is turned off. The light will flash rapidly if the alarm system is arming and one or more of the monitored entry points is not closed. The light will stay on if the alarm is arming and all entry points are closed.

For information regarding this light and the vehicle's security system, see *Vehicle Alarm System on page 2-10*.

Reduced Engine Power Light

The reduced engine power light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light, along with the malfunction indicator lamp, displays when a noticeable reduction in the vehicle's performance occurs.

The vehicle can be driven at a reduced speed when the reduced engine power light is on but acceleration and speed might be reduced. If this light stays on, see your dealer as soon as possible for diagnosis and repair.

High-Beam On Light

This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 6-1*.

Front Fog Lamp Light

The fog lamp light comes on when the fog lamps are in use.

The light goes out when the fog lamps are turned off. See *Front Fog Lamps on page 6-3* for more information.

Lamps On Reminder

This light comes on when the exterior lamps are in use. See *Exterior Lamp Controls on page 6-1*.

Cruise Control Light

The cruise control light comes on whenever the cruise control is set.

The light goes out when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control on page 9-20* for more information.

Door open warning light

This light comes on when a door is open or not securely latched. Before driving, check that all doors are properly closed.

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC)

The Driver Information Centre (DIC) displays information about the vehicle. It also displays warning messages if a system problem is detected. See *Vehicle Messages on page 5-21* for more information. All messages appear in the DIC display located in the centre of the instrument panel cluster.

The vehicle may also have features that can be customised through the controls on the radio. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-27* for more information.

DIC Operation and Displays

The DIC has different displays, which can be accessed by using the DIC buttons on the turn signal lever. The DIC displays trip, fuel, vehicle system information, and warning messages if a system problem is detected.

DIC Buttons

SET/CLR: Press to set or clear the menu item displayed.

△ ▽ (Thumbwheel): Use to scroll through the menus.

MENU: Press to display the Trip/ Fuel menu and the Vehicle Information menu. This button is also used to return to or exit the last screen displayed on the DIC.

Trip/Fuel Menu Items

Press MENU on the turn signal lever until Trip/Fuel Menu is displayed. Use ⌃⌄ to scroll through the following possible menu items:

- Digital Speedometer
- Timer
- Average Vehicle Speed
- Instantaneous Fuel Economy
- Average Fuel Economy
- Fuel Range
- Trip 2
- Trip 1

Digital Speedometer

The digital speedometer, available on some vehicles, shows how fast the vehicle is moving in kilometres per hour (km/h). The speedometer cannot be reset.

Timer

Available on some vehicles, this display can be used as a timer. To start the timer, press SET/CLR while Timer is displayed. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset, not including time the ignition is off. Time will continue to be counted as long as the ignition is on, even if another display is being shown on the DIC. The timer will record up to 99 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds (99:59:59) after which the display will return to zero. To stop the timer, press SET/CLR briefly while Timer is displayed. To reset the timer to zero, press and hold SET/CLR.

Average Vehicle Speed

This display shows the average speed of the vehicle in kilometres per hour (km/h). This average is calculated based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset of this value. On some models, this display is shown as ∅ km/h. The average speed can be reset by pressing SET/CLR while the Average Vehicle Speed display is showing.

Instantaneous Fuel Economy

This display shows the current fuel economy in litres per 100 kilometres (L/100 km). This number reflects only the fuel economy that the vehicle has right now and changes frequently as driving conditions change. On some models, this display is shown as ⛽ L/100 km. Unlike average economy, this display cannot be reset. On some vehicles, this display is shown on the same page with the average fuel consumption display.

Average Fuel Economy

This display shows the approximate average litres per 100 kilometres (L/100 km). This number is calculated based on the number of L/100 km recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. On some models, this display is shown

as ∅ L/100 km. The fuel economy can be reset by pressing SET/CLR while the Average Fuel Economy display is showing. On some vehicles, this display is shown on the same page with the instantaneous fuel economy display.

Fuel Range

This display shows the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. On some models, this display is shown as km. Fuel range cannot be reset.

Trip 1 and Trip 2

This display shows the current distance travelled, in kilometres (km), since the last reset for the trip odometer. The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing SET/CLR while the trip odometer display is showing.

Vehicle Information Menu Items

Press MENU on the turn signal lever until Vehicle Information menu is displayed. Use ⏶⏷ to scroll through the following possible menu items:

- Remaining Oil Life (Diesel)
- Battery Voltage

On some models, the menus may only be accessible when the vehicle is stopped.

Remaining Oil Life (Diesel)

This display shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life. If REMAINING OIL LIFE 99% is displayed, that means 99% of the current oil life remains. On some models, this display is shown as %.

When the remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message, or code 82, will appear on the display. See *Engine Oil Messages on page 5-23*. The oil should changed as soon as possible. See *Engine Oil on page 10-7*. In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended in the Maintenance Schedule. See the Service/Warranty booklet.

Remember, the Oil Life display must be reset after each oil change. It will not reset itself. Also, be careful not to reset the Oil Life display accidentally at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, press SET/CLR while the Oil Life display is active. See *Engine Oil Life System (Diesel) on page 10-10*.

Battery Voltage

This display, available on some vehicles, shows the current battery voltage. If the voltage is in the normal range, the value will display. For example, the display may read Battery Voltage 15.0 Volts. The

vehicle's charging system regulates voltage based on the state of the battery. The battery voltage can fluctuate while viewing this information on the DIC. This is normal. See *Charging System Light on page 5-10* for more information. If there is a problem with the battery charging system, the DIC will display a message

Vehicle Messages

DIC messages display when the status of the vehicle has changed and action may be needed to correct the condition. Multiple messages appear one after another.

Press any of the DIC buttons on the turn signal lever to acknowledge and clear them from the display. More urgent messages cannot be cleared from the DIC display. All messages should be taken seriously. Clearing messages will not correct the problem.

Vehicle messages are displayed as text. The messages and information about them follow.

Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

BATTERY SAVER ACTIVE

This message displays when the vehicle has detected that the battery voltage is dropping beyond a reasonable point. The battery saver system starts reducing features of the vehicle that may be noticed. At the point that features are disabled, this message displays. Turn off unnecessary accessories to allow the battery to recharge.

LOW BATTERY

This message is displayed when the battery voltage is low. See *Battery on page 10-21*.

SERVICE BATTERY CHARGING SYSTEM

This message is displayed when there is a fault in the battery charging system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

Brake System Messages

BRAKE FLUID LOW

This message is displayed when the brake fluid level is low. See *Brake Fluid on page 10-20*.

RELEASE PARKING BRAKE

This message is displayed if the electric parking brake is on while the vehicle is in motion. Release it before you attempt to drive. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-13* for more information.

SERVICE BRAKE ASSIST

This message may be displayed when there is a problem with the brake boost assist system. When this message is displayed, the brake boost assist motor might be heard operating and you might notice pulsation in the brake pedal. This is normal under these conditions. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

SERVICE PARKING BRAKE

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the electric parking brake. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-13* for more information. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

STEP ON BRAKE TO RELEASE PARK BRAKE

This message is displayed if you attempt to release the electric parking brake without the brake pedal applied. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-13* for more information.

Cruise Control Messages

CRUISE SET TO XXX

This message displays when the cruise control is set and shows the speed it was set to. See *Cruise Control on page 9-20*.

Door open messages

BONNET OPEN

This message will display when the bonnet is open. Close the bonnet completely.

BOOTLID OPEN

This message will display when the boot is open. Close the boot completely.

Engine Cooling System Messages

A/C OFF DUE TO HIGH ENGINE TEMP

This message displays when the engine coolant becomes hotter than the normal operating temperature. To avoid added strain on a hot engine, the air conditioning compressor automatically turns off. When the coolant temperature returns to normal, the air conditioning compressor turns back on. You can continue to drive the vehicle.

If this message continues to appear, have the system repaired by your dealer as soon as possible to avoid damage to the engine.

COOLANT LEVEL LOW ADD COOLANT

This message will display if the coolant is low. See *Engine Coolant on page 10-13*.

ENGINE OVERHEATED — IDLE ENGINE

This message displays when the engine coolant temperature is too hot. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down.

ENGINE OVERHEATED — STOP ENGINE

This message displays and a continuous chime sounds if the engine cooling system reaches unsafe temperatures for operation. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so to avoid severe damage. This message clears when the engine has cooled to a safe operating temperature.

Engine Oil Messages

CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON

This message displays on diesel vehicles when the engine oil needs to be changed. When you change the engine oil, be sure to reset the Oil Life System. See *Engine Oil Life System (Diesel) on page 10-10* and *Driver Information Centre (DIC) on page 5-18* for information on how to reset the system. See *Engine Oil on page 10-7* and the Service/Warranty booklet for more information.

ENGINE OIL HOT, IDLE ENGINE

This message displays when the engine oil temperature is too hot. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down.

OIL PRESSURE LOW— STOP ENGINE

This message displays if low oil pressure levels occur. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and do not operate it until the cause of the low oil pressure has been corrected. Check the oil as soon as possible and have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

Engine Power Messages

ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED

This message displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed while this message is on, but maximum acceleration and speed may be reduced. Any time this message stays on, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Fuel System Messages

FUEL LEVEL LOW

This message displays when the vehicle is low on fuel. Refuel as soon as possible.

Diesel Particulate Filter Messages

DIESEL PARTIC (Particulate) FILTER IS FULL CONTINUE DRIVING

This message may display when the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter reach a certain amount. Continue driving to prevent the filter from clogging. See *Diesel Particulate Filter on page 9-8* for more information.

DIESEL PARTIC (Particulate) FILTER IS FULL CONTINUED DRIVING MANDATORY

This message may display when the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter reach a certain amount. Continued driving is mandatory to prevent the filter from clogging. See *Diesel Particulate Filter on page 9-8* for more information.

Key and Lock Messages

NO REMOTE DETECTED

This message displays when the transmitter battery is weak on vehicles with Keyless Access. See "Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery" under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.

REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY

This message displays when the battery in the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter needs to be replaced. See "Battery Replacement" under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.

USE TRANSMITTER POCKET TO START

This message displays when the battery in the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter needs to be recharged. See "Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery" under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3*.

Lamp Messages

AUTOMATIC LIGHT CONTROL ON

This message is displayed when the automatic light control has been turned on. See *Automatic Headlamp System on page 6-2*.

AUTOMATIC LIGHT CONTROL OFF

This message is displayed when the automatic light control has been turned off. See *Automatic Headlamp System on page 6-2*.

Object Detection System Messages

PARK ASSIST OFF

This message displays when the park assist system has been turned off or when there is a temporary condition causing the system to be disabled. See *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-22*.

SERVICE PARK ASSIST

This message displays if there is a problem with the Ultrasonic Parking Assist (UPA) system. Do not use this system to help you park. See *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-22*.

Ride Control System Messages

SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL

This message displays when there is a problem with the Traction Control System (TCS). When this message is displayed, the system will not limit wheel spin. Adjust your driving accordingly. See your dealer for service.

SERVICE ESP

This message displays if there is a problem with the ESC system. If this message appears, try to reset the system. Stop; turn off the engine for at least 15 seconds; then start the engine again. If this message still comes on, it means there is a problem. See your dealer for service. The vehicle is safe to drive, however, you do not have the benefit of ESC, so reduce your speed and drive accordingly.

Service Vehicle Messages

SERVICE AC SYSTEM

This message displays if there is a problem with the air conditioning system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

SERVICE POWER STEERING

This message displays if there is a problem with the electric power steering system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

SERVICE STEERING COLUMN LOCK

This message displays if there is a problem with the steering column lock system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

SERVICE VEHICLE SOON

This message displays if there is a problem with the vehicle. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

STEERING COLUMN IS LOCKED

This message displays when the engine is running and the steering column is locked. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

Starting the Vehicle Messages

TURN STEERING WHEEL START VEHICLE AGAIN

This message displays when you try to start the vehicle, but the column remains locked. Try turning the steering wheel while starting the vehicle to unlock the steering column. If the vehicle still does not start, turn the steering wheel the other way, and try starting the vehicle again.

Transmission Messages

SERVICE TRANSMISSION

This message displays if there is a problem with the transmission. See your dealer.

SHIFT DENIED

This message displays when attempting to use the automatic transmission manual mode to shift to too low or too high of a gear. See *Manual Mode on page 9-11*.

SHIFT TO PARK

This message displays when the transmission needs to be shifted to P (Park). This may appear when turning the ignition off or removing the key from the vehicle if the vehicle is not in P (Park).

TRANSMISSION HOT — IDLE ENGINE

This message displays and a chime sounds if the transmission fluid in the vehicle gets hot. Driving with the transmission fluid temperature high can cause damage to the vehicle. Stop the vehicle and let it idle to allow the transmission to cool. This message clears when the fluid temperature reaches a safe level.

Vehicle Reminder Messages

ICE POSSIBLE DRIVE WITH CARE

This message displays when ice conditions are possible.

Washer Fluid Messages

WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID

This message may display when the washer fluid level is low. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-18*.

Window Messages

OPEN, THEN CLOSE DRIVER WINDOW

This message is displayed when the window needs to be reprogrammed. If the vehicle's battery has been recharged or disconnected, you will need to reprogram the front window for the express-up feature to work. See *Power Windows on page 2-14*.

Vehicle Personalisation

The audio system controls are used to access the personalisation menus for customising vehicle features. Not all features are available on every vehicle. Only the features available on a particular vehicle will be displayed on that vehicle.

CONFIG (Configuration): Press to access the Configuration Settings Menu.

TUNE/MENU: Press the centre of this knob to enter the menus and select menu items. Rotate the TUNE/MENU knob to scroll through the menus.

BACK ⇦ : Press to exit or move backward in a menu.

Entering the Personalisation Menus

1. Press CONFIG to access the Configuration Settings menu.
2. Rotate the TUNE/MENU knob to highlight Vehicle Settings.
3. Press the centre of the TUNE/MENU knob to select the Vehicle Settings menu.

The following list of menu items may be available:

- Climate and Air Quality
- Comfort and Convenience
- Lighting
- Power Door Locks
- Remote Lock/Unlock/Start
- Restore to Factory Settings?

Rotate the TUNE/MENU knob to highlight the menu. Press TUNE/MENU to select it. Each of the menus is detailed in the following information.

Climate and Air Quality

Select the Climate and Air Quality menu and the following may be displayed:

- Auto Fan Speed
- Auto Demist
- Auto Rear Demist

Auto Fan Speed

This will allow you to select the automatic fan speed. This feature sets the climate control fan speed to maintain the interior temperature.

Press TUNE/MENU when Auto fan speed is highlighted to open the menu. Rotate the TUNE/MENU knob to highlight High, Medium, or Low. Press TUNE/MENU to confirm the selection and move back to the last menu.

Auto Demist

Your vehicle may allow for turning the auto demist on or off.

Press TUNE/MENU when Auto Demist is highlighted to select On or Off. A checkmark indicates the feature is turned on. Press Back to move back to the last menu.

Auto Rear Demist

This will allow you to turn the auto rear demist on or off. This feature will automatically select the settings needed to demist the rear window.

Press TUNE/MENU when Auto Rear Demist is highlighted to select On or Off. A checkmark indicates the feature is turned on. Press Back to move back to the last menu.

Comfort and Convenience

Select the Comfort and Convenience menu and the following may be displayed:

- Chime Volume
- Button Chime

Chime Volume

This allows the selection of the chime volume level.

Press TUNE/MENU when Chime Volume is highlighted. Rotate the TUNE/MENU knob to select Normal or High. Press Back to go back to the last menu.

Button Chime

When on, the touch screen buttons will make a sound when touched.

Press TUNE/MENU when Button Chime is highlighted to select On or Off. A checkmark indicates the feature is turned on. Press Back to move back to the last menu.

Lighting

Select the Lighting menu and the following will be displayed:

- Vehicle Locator Lights
- Exit Lighting

Vehicle Locator Lights

This allows the vehicle locator lights to be turned on or off.

Press TUNE/MENU when Vehicle Locator Lights is highlighted to select On or Off. A checkmark indicates the feature is turned on. Press Back to move back to the last menu.

Exit Lighting

This allows the selection of how long the exterior lamps stay on when leaving the vehicle when it is dark outside.

Press TUNE/MENU when Exit Lighting is highlighted. Rotate the TUNE/MENU knob to select Off, 30 Seconds, 1 Minute, or 2 Minutes. Press TUNE/MENU to confirm and go back to the last menu.

Power Door Locks

Select Power Door Locks and the following may be displayed:

- Open Door Anti Lock Out
- Auto Door Lock
- Delay Door Lock

Open Door Anti Lock Out

When on, this feature will keep the driver door from locking when the door is open. If Off is selected, the Delay Door Lock menu will be available.

Press TUNE/MENU when Open Door Anti Lock Out is highlighted to select On or Off. A checkmark indicates the feature is turned on. Press Back to move back to the last menu.

Auto Door Lock

This allows selection of whether the doors will automatically lock when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park).

Press TUNE/MENU when Auto Door Lock is highlighted to select On or Off. A checkmark indicates the feature is turned on. Press Back to move back to the last menu.

Delay Door Lock

When on, this feature will delay the locking of the doors. To override the delay, press the power door lock button on the instrument panel.

Press TUNE/MENU when Delay Door Lock is highlighted to select On or Off. Press Back to move back to the last menu.

Remote Lock/Unlock/Start

Select Remote Lock/Unlock/Start and the following may be displayed:

- Remote Unlock Feedback
- Remote Lock Feedback
- Remote Door Unlock
- Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors
- Passive Door Unlock
- Passive Door Lock
- Remote Left in Vehicle Reminder

Remote Unlock Feedback

When on, the exterior lamps will flash when pressing on the RKE transmitter.

Press TUNE/MENU when Remote Unlock Feedback is highlighted. Rotate the TUNE/MENU knob to select Flash Lights or Off. Press Back to move back to the last menu.

Remote Lock Feedback

When on, the exterior lamps will flash when pressing on the RKE transmitter.

Press TUNE/MENU when Remote Lock Feedback is highlighted. Rotate TUNE/MENU to select, Lights and Horn, Lights Only, Horn Only, or Off. Press Back to move back to the last menu.

Remote Door Unlock

This allows selection of what doors are unlocked when pressing on the RKE transmitter.

Press TUNE/MENU when Remote Door Unlock is highlighted. Rotate the TUNE/MENU knob to select Driver door or All doors. Press Back to move back to the last menu.

Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors

This allows selection of automatically relocking all doors if the doors are unlocked but not opened.

Press TUNE/MENU when Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors is highlighted to select On or Off. A checkmark indicates the feature is turned on. Press Back to move back to the last menu.

Passive Door Unlock

This allows selection of which doors are unlocked by pressing the button on the outside door handle.

Press TUNE/MENU when Passive Door Unlock is highlighted. Rotate the TUNE/MENU knob to select All Doors or Driver Door Only. Press Back to move back to the last menu.

Passive Door Lock

This allows selection of whether the doors are locked 8 seconds after the key is removed from the vehicle and the doors are shut.

Press TUNE/MENU when Passive Door Lock is highlighted. Rotate the TUNE/MENU knob to select Off, On, or On with Horn Chirp. Press Back to move back to the last menu.

Remote Left in Vehicle Reminder

When on, a horn chirp will sound if the doors are closed with the ignition off and at least one transmitter has not been removed from the vehicle.

Press TUNE/MENU when Remote Left in Vehicle Reminder is highlighted to select On or Off. A checkmark indicates the feature is turned on. Press Back to move back to the last menu.

Return to Factory Settings?

Select Return to Factory Settings? to return all of the vehicle personalisation to the default settings. Rotate the TUNE/MENU knob to select Yes or No. Press TUNE/MENU to confirm and go back to the last menu.

Lighting

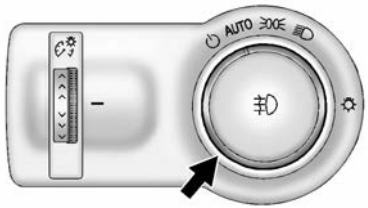
Exterior Lighting
Exterior Lamp Controls 6-1
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder 6-1
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 6-1
Headlamp Flash 6-2
Automatic Headlamp System 6-2
Hazard Warning Flashers 6-2
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 6-3
Front Fog Lamps 6-3

Interior Lighting
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 6-4
Courtesy Lamps 6-4
Dome Lamps 6-4
Reading Lamps 6-5

Lighting Features
Entry Lighting 6-5
Exit Lighting 6-5
Battery Load Management 6-5

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls



The exterior lamp control is on the instrument panel on the right side of the steering wheel.

Turn the control to the following positions:

(Off): Turns off the exterior lamps. The knob returns to the AUTO position after it is released. Turn to off again to reactivate the AUTO mode.

AUTO (Automatic): Automatically turns the exterior lamps on and off, depending on outside lighting.

(Park Lamps): Turns on the park lamps including all lamps, except the headlamps.

(Headlamps): Turns on the headlamps together with the park lamps and instrument panel lights.

Exterior Lamps Off Reminder

A warning chime sounds if the driver door is opened while the ignition is off and the exterior lamps are on.

Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer

(Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer): Push the turn signal lever away from you and release, to turn the high beams on. To return to low beams, push the lever again or pull it toward you and release.

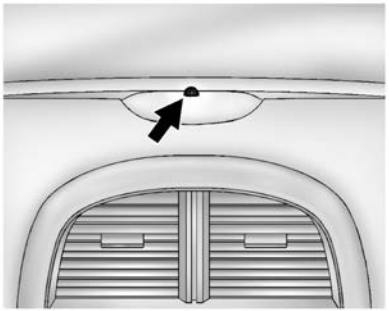
This indicator light turns on in the instrument cluster when the high-beam headlamps are on.

Headlamp Flash

To flash the high beams, pull the turn signal lever toward you, and release.

Automatic Headlamp System

When the exterior lamp control is set to AUTO and it is dark enough outside, the headlamps come on automatically.



There is a light sensor located on top of the instrument panel. Do not cover the sensor. Otherwise the headlamps will come on when they are not needed.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage or tunnel.

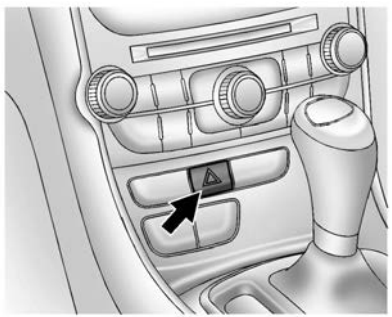
When it is bright enough outside, the headlamps will turn off.

The automatic headlamp system turns off when the exterior lamp control is turned to ⏻ or the ignition is off.

Lights On with Wipers

If the windscreen wipers are activated in daylight with the engine on, and the exterior lamp control is in AUTO, the headlamps, park lamps, and other exterior lamps come on. The transition time for the lamps coming on varies based on wiper speed. When the wipers are not operating, these lamps turn off. Move the exterior lamp control to ⏻ or AUTO to disable this feature.

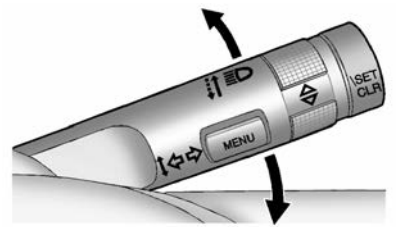
Hazard Warning Flashers



(Hazard Warning Flasher): Press this button on the centre stack to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. Press again to turn the flashers off.

The hazard warning flashers turn on automatically if the airbags deploy.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Move the turn signal lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

An arrow on the instrument cluster flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

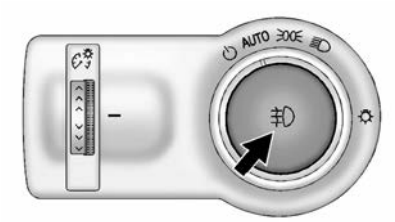
Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. Hold it there until the lane change is completed. If the lever is briefly pressed and released, the turn signal flashes three times.

The turn signal can be turned off manually by moving the lever back to its original position.

If after signalling a turn or lane change, the arrow flashes rapidly or does not come on, a signal bulb may be burnt out.

Have any burnt out bulbs replaced. If a bulb is not burnt out, check the fuse. See *Fuses on page 10-27*.

Front Fog Lamps



If equipped with front fog lamps, the button is on the exterior lamp control, right of the steering wheel.

To turn on the front fog lamps, the ignition and the headlamps or park lamps must be on.

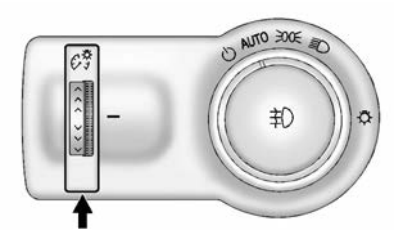
If the front fog lamps are turned on while the exterior lamp control is in the AUTO position, the park lamps come on automatically.

(Front Fog Lamps): Press to turn on or off. An indicator light on the instrument cluster comes on when the front fog lamps are on.

Some localities have laws that require the headlamps to be on along with the fog lamps.

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control



The brightness of the instrument panel lighting and steering wheel controls can be adjusted.

(Instrument Panel Illumination): Move and hold the thumbwheel up or down to brighten or dim the lights.

Courtesy Lamps

The courtesy lamps come on automatically when any door is opened and the dome lamp is in the door position.

Dome Lamps

The interior lamps control in the overhead console controls both the front and rear interior lamps.

To operate, press the buttons:

(Off): Turns the lamps off.

(Door): Turns the lamps on when any door is opened.

(On): Keeps the lamps on all the time.

Reading Lamps

The reading lamps are in the overhead console.

or (Reading Lamps): Press the button near each lamp to turn it on or off.

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting

The headlamps, taillamps, number plate lamps, reverse lamps, dome lamps and most of the interior lights turn on briefly when the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter button is pressed. After about 30 seconds the exterior lamps turn off then the dome lamps and remaining interior lights dim to off. Entry lighting can be disabled manually by changing the ignition out of the OFF position, or by pressing the RKE transmitter button.

Exit Lighting

The headlamps and taillamps come on for a set amount of time after exiting the vehicle then automatically turn off.

The exit lighting feature can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-27*.

Battery Load Management

The vehicle has Electric Power Management (EPM), which estimates the battery's temperature and state of charge. It then adjusts the voltage for best performance and extended life of the battery.

When the battery's state of charge is low, the voltage is raised slightly to quickly bring the charge back up. When the state of charge is high, the voltage is lowered slightly to prevent overcharging. If the vehicle has a voltage display on the Driver Information Centre (DIC), you may see the voltage move up or down. This is normal. If there is a problem, an alert will be displayed.

The battery can be discharged at idle if the electrical loads are very high. This is true for all vehicles. This is because the generator

(alternator) may not be spinning fast enough at idle to produce all the power that is needed for very high electrical loads.

A high electrical load occurs when several of the following are on, such as: headlamps, high beams, fog lamps, rear window demister, climate control fan at high speed, heated seats, engine cooling fans, trailer loads, and loads plugged into accessory power outlets.

EPM works to prevent excessive discharge of the battery. It does this by balancing the generator's output and the vehicle's electrical needs. It can increase engine idle speed to generate more power, whenever needed. It can temporarily reduce the power demands of some accessories.

Normally, these actions occur in steps or levels, without being noticeable. In rare cases at the highest levels of corrective action, this action may be noticeable to the driver. If so, a DIC message might be displayed and it is recommended that the driver reduce the electrical loads as much as possible. See *Battery Voltage and Charging Messages on page 5-21*.

Infotainment System

Introduction
Overview 7-1
Steering Wheel Controls 7-7
Using the System 7-7

Radio
AM-FM Radio 7-12
Radio Data System (RDS) . . . 7-14
Radio Reception 7-14
Backglass Antenna 7-15
Quick Info 7-15
Pandora Internet Radio 7-16
Stitcher Internet Radio 7-21

Audio Players
CD Player 7-25
USB 7-27
Auxiliary Devices 7-33
Bluetooth Audio 7-34

Navigation
Using the Navigation System 7-35
Maps 7-38
Navigation Symbols 7-38
Destination 7-40
Configure Menu 7-50
Global Positioning System (GPS) 7-52
Vehicle Positioning 7-53
Problems with Route Guidance 7-54
If the System Needs Service 7-54
Map Data Updates 7-54
Database Coverage Explanations 7-54

Voice Recognition
Voice Recognition 7-55

Bluetooth Phone/Devices
Bluetooth 7-61
Text Messaging 7-67

Trademarks and Licence Agreements
Trademarks and Licence Agreements 7-70

Introduction

Overview

Read the following pages to become familiar with the infotainment system features.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help with this by disabling some functions when driving. A greyed out function is not available when the vehicle is moving.

All functions are available when the vehicle is parked. Before driving:

- Become familiar with the infotainment system operation, buttons on the faceplate, and touch-sensitive screen buttons.
- Set up the audio by pre-setting favourite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single

button or by using a single voice command for vehicles equipped with phone capability.

⚠ Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using the infotainment or navigation system could cause a crash.

You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to these tasks while driving. Limit glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

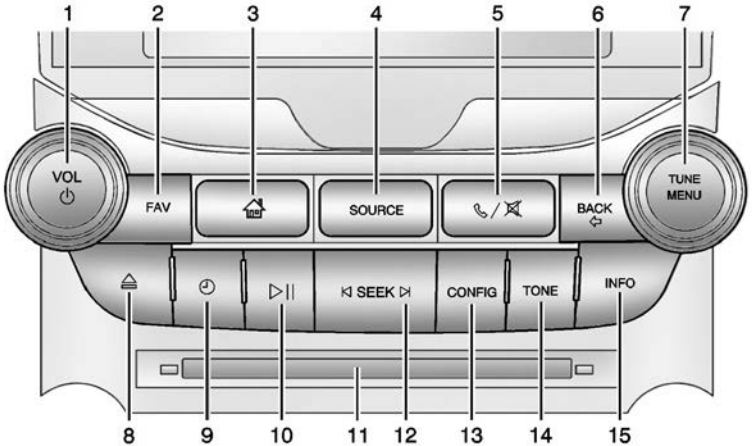
The vehicle has Retained Accessory Power (RAP). With RAP, the audio system can be played even after the ignition is turned off. See “Retained Accessory Power (RAP)” in the owner manual.

Infotainment System Overview

The infotainment system is controlled by using the buttons, touch screen, steering wheel controls, and voice recognition.

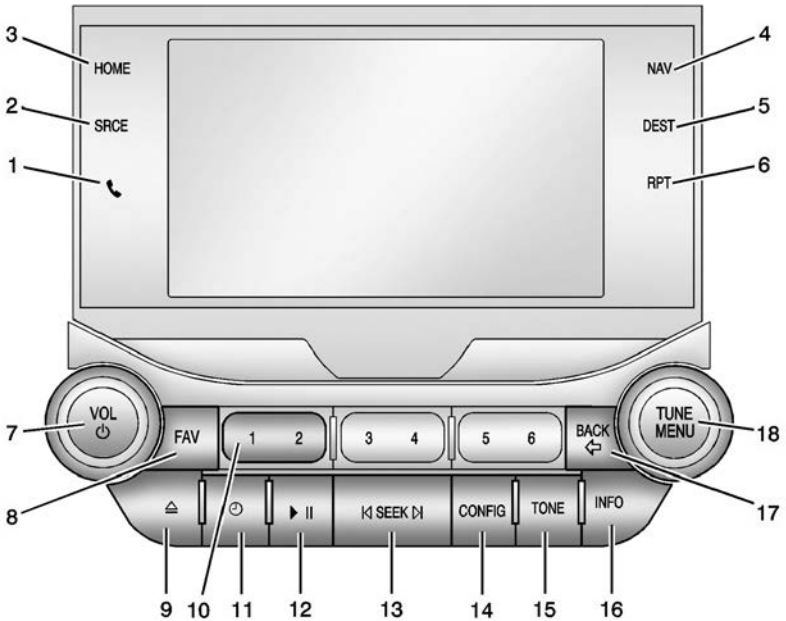
See *Using the System on page 7-7*.

Radio without Navigation



1. VOL/ ⏻ (Volume/Power)
2. FAV (Favourite Pages 1–6)
3. ⌂ (Home)
4. SOURCE
5. ✆ /🔇 (Phone/Mute)
6. BACK ⇦
7. TUNE/MENU Knob
8. ⏏ (Eject)
9. 🕘 (Clock)
10. ▷/❚❚ (Play/Pause)
11. CD Slot
12. ⏮ SEEK ⏭
13. CONFIG (Configure)
14. TONE
15. INFO (Information)

Radio with Navigation



1. (Phone)
2. SRCE (Source)
3. HOME (Home Page)
4. NAV (Navigation)
5. DEST (Destination)
6. RPT (Repeat)
7. VOL/ (Volume/Power)
8. FAV (Favourite Pages 1–6)
9. (Eject)
10. Preset Buttons (1–6)
11. (Clock)
12. (Play/Pause)
13. SEEK
14. CONFIG (Configure)
15. TONE
16. INFO (Information)
17. BACK
18. TUNE/MENU Knob

Infotainment Control Buttons

The buttons on the faceplate are used to start primary functions while using the infotainment system.

/ (Phone/Mute):

- Press to enter the phone main screen. See *Bluetooth on page 7-61*.
- Press and hold to mute or unmute the infotainment system.

(Phone): See *Bluetooth on page 7-61*.

SRCE or SOURCE: Press to change the audio source to AM, FM, Pandora®, Stitcher®, CD, USB, AUX, or Bluetooth Audio.

HOME or (Home): Press to go to the Home Page. See “Home Page” in this section.

NAV (Navigation):

- Press to view the vehicle's current position on the map screen.
- Continue pressing to cycle through the full map and split screens.

DEST (Destination):

- Press to enter a destination.
- If a destination has already been entered, press to access the Destination Menu. See *Destination on page 7-40*.

RPT (Repeat): Press to repeat the last voice guidance prompt.

VOL / (Volume/Power):

- Press to turn the system on and off.
- Turn to adjust the volume.

FAV (Favourite Pages 1–6): Press to display the current favourite page number above the preset buttons. Keep pressing to scroll through the favourites pages. The stored stations for each list display on the bottom of the screen. The number of preset Favourite Pages can be changed by touching the Config button on the Home Page, then

touching Radio Settings, and then touching Number of Favourite Pages.

⏏ **(Eject):** Press to eject a disc from the CD player. See *CD Player on page 7-25*.

Preset Buttons (1–6): The preset buttons numbered one through six can be used to select stored AM and FM stations.

🕘 **(Clock):** Press to enable the time program.

⏯ **(Play/Pause):** Press to pause or resume playback. This feature is unavailable for AM and FM. See *CD Player on page 7-25*, *Pandora Internet Radio on page 7-16*, *Stitcher Internet Radio on page 7-21*, *USB on page 7-27*, or *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-34*.

⏭ **(Next/Fast Forward):**

- CD, USB, Bluetooth Audio: Press to seek the next track.
- CD, USB, Bluetooth Audio: Press and hold to fast forward through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. See *CD Player on page 7-25*, *USB on page 7-27*, or *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-34*.
- AM and FM: Press to seek to the previous strong station.

⏮ **(Previous/Reverse):**

- CD, USB, Bluetooth Audio: Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track.
- CD, USB, Bluetooth Audio: Press and hold to quickly reverse through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. See *CD Player on page 7-25*, *USB on page 7-27*, or *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-34*.
- AM and FM: Press to seek to the previous strong station.

CONFIG (Configuration Menu): Press to adjust features for Languages, Time and Date, Radio Settings, Phone Settings, Display Settings, Navigation Settings (if equipped), and Vehicle Settings.

TONE : Press TONE or the Tone Settings button on the Home Page to adjust Bass, Mid (Midrange), Treble, EQ, Fade, and Balance. Tone settings are specific to each source. See *AM-FM Radio on page 7-12*.

INFO (Information): Press to toggle through an audio or navigation information screen.

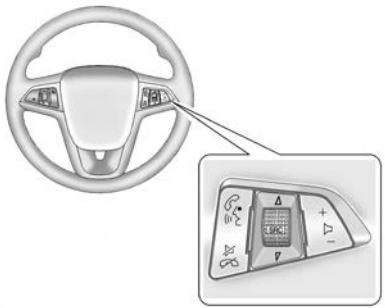
BACK⇦ : Press to return to the previous screen in a menu.

TUNE/ MENU Knob:

- Press to enter the menu for the current band or media.
- Turn to highlight a feature.
- Press to activate the highlighted feature.
- Turn to manually change the radio station.

Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on the vehicle options, some audio functions can be controlled through the steering wheel controls.



(Push to Talk): Press to answer an incoming call or to interact with Bluetooth or voice recognition. See *Bluetooth on page 7-61* or *Voice Recognition on page 7-55*.

(Mute/End Call): Press to decline an incoming call, or to end a current call. Press to silence the vehicle speakers while using the infotainment system. Press again to turn the sound on. Press to cancel voice recognition.

SRC (Thumbwheel Control): Press to select an audio source.

Use the thumbwheel to select the next or previous favourite radio station, CD, MP3 track, USB, and Bluetooth Audio.

Use SRC to skip to the next song or show using Pandora or Stitcher. See *Pandora Internet Radio on page 7-16* or *Stitcher Internet Radio on page 7-21*.

+ – (Volume): Press + to increase the volume. Press − to decrease.

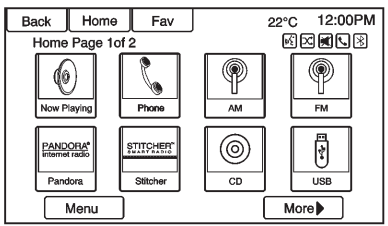
Using the System

The infotainment system is controlled by touching the screen and by using the knobs and other buttons.

Voice recognition, through the steering wheel controls, can be used to control the infotainment features.

Press / on the steering wheel controls to begin voice recognition. See *Voice Recognition on page 7-55*.

Home Page



Touch Screen Buttons

The Home Page allows access to many of the features.

Back: Touch to return to the previous page.

Home or (Home): Touch to go back to the Home Page.

Fav: Touch to display a page of stored (favourite) AM and FM stations. Keep touching Fav to scroll through the favourite pages.

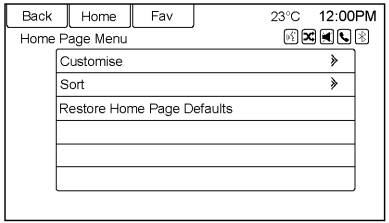
Menu: Touch to go to the Home Page Menu.

More ▶ : Touch to go to the next page.

Previous ◀: Touch to go to the previous page.

Next ▶ : Touch to go to the next page.

Home Page Customisation



The first Home Page can be customised.

To add screen buttons:

1. Touch Menu.
2. Touch Customise.
3. Touch a screen button to add or remove from the first Home Page. A checkmark indicates it will be displayed. The maximum number of buttons on Home Page 1 is eight.
4. Touch Done.

To move screen buttons:

1. Touch Sort.
2. Touch an icon to switch with another icon.
3. Select the icon to swap with.
4. Touch Done.

To restore Home Page 1 defaults:

1. Touch Menu.
2. Touch Restore Home Page Defaults.
3. Touch Yes or Cancel.

Home Page Features

Touch screen buttons are highlighted when a feature is available.

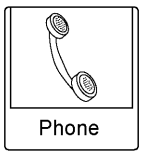
Various functions are disabled when the vehicle is moving.

Touch the Now Playing screen button to display the active source page. The sources available are AM, FM, CD, USB/iPod, Pandora, Stitcher, and AUX.

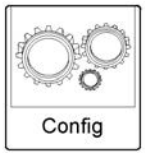
See *AM-FM Radio on page 7-12*, *CD Player on page 7-25*, *Pandora Internet Radio on page 7-16*, *Stitcher Internet Radio on page 7-21*, and *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-33*.

Touch the Navigation screen button to display a map of your current vehicle position. See *Using the Navigation System on page 7-35*, *Maps on page 7-38*, *Navigation Symbols on page 7-38*, and *Configure Menu on page 7-50*.

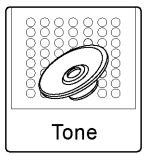
Touch the Destination screen button to display the Destination Entry home page or the Destination Menu. The available screen buttons provide easy access to a variety of ways to enter a destination. See *Destination on page 7-40*.



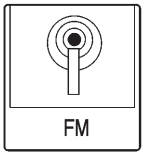
Touch the Phone screen button to display the Phone main page. See *Bluetooth on page 7-61*.



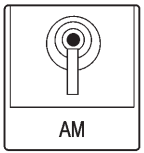
Touch the Config screen button to display the Config main page. From this display, adjust features such as time and date, radio, phone, navigation, vehicle, and display. See *Configure Menu on page 7-50*.



Touch the Tone screen button to display the Tone main page. Adjust the tone and speakers by touching the screen buttons to change the levels of sound for treble, midrange, bass, fade, and balance. See *AM-FM Radio on page 7-12*.



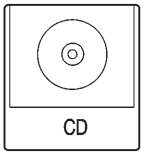
Touch the FM screen button to display the FM main page and play the current or last tuned FM station. See *AM-FM Radio on page 7-12*.



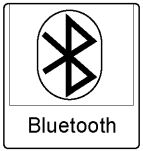
Touch the AM screen button to display the AM main page and play the current or last tuned AM station. See *AM-FM Radio on page 7-12*.

Touch the Pandora screen button to display the Pandora home page and stream personalised radio stations based on artists, songs, genres, and comedians. See *Pandora Internet Radio on page 7-16*.

Touch the Stitcher screen button to display the Stitcher home page and stream news, sports, and entertainment shows through the audio system. See *Stitcher Internet Radio on page 7-21*.

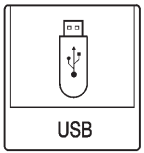


Touch the CD screen button to display the CD main page and play the current or last CD track selected. See *CD Player on page 7-25*.

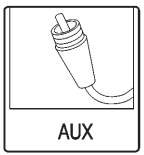


Touch the ⓑ Bluetooth screen button to display the Bluetooth Audio main page to play music through a Bluetooth device. See *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-34*.

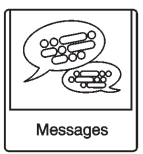
Touch the iPod screen button to display the iPod main page and play the current or last track selected. See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-33*.



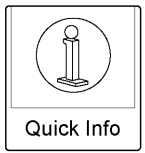
Touch the USB screen button to display the USB main page and play the current or last track selected. See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-33*.



Touch the AUX screen button to access any connected auxiliary device. See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-33*.



Touch the Messages screen button to display the Text Message Inbox. See *Text Messaging on page 7-67*.



Touch the Quick Info screen button to access audio and navigation information. See *Quick Info on page 7-15*.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfiber cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfiber cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfiber cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfiber cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

⚠ Caution

Do not attach a device with a suction cup to the display. This may cause damage and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Playing the Radio

VOL /⏻ (Volume/Power):

- Touch to turn the radio on or off.
- Turn to increase or decrease the volume of the active source.

The steering wheel controls can also be used to adjust the volume. See *Steering Wheel Controls on page 7-7*.

Radio Operation

The radio will work when the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY. When the ignition is turned from ON/RUN to LOCK/OFF, the radio will continue to work for 10 minutes or until the driver door is opened.

The radio can be turned on by pressing the power button on the radio and will stay on for 10 minutes. Opening the driver door will not turn the radio off when pressing the power button.

Some radios may stay on longer and reset the time for 10 minutes if there are any additional presses of any radio button.

The radio can be turned off at any time by pressing the power button.

Audio Source

Press SOURCE or SRCE on the faceplate or SRC on the steering wheel controls to display and scroll through the available sources AM, FM, Pandora, Stitcher, CD, USB, AUX, and Bluetooth Audio.

Infotainment System Settings

Tone Settings

To access the tone settings, press TONE or the Tone button on the Home Page. Tone settings are specific to each source.

To adjust the settings:

- Bass: Touch + or − to change the level.
- Mid (Midrange): Touch + or − to change the level.
- Treble: Touch + or − to change the level.
- EQ: Touch and turn the TUNE/MENU knob to cycle through the preset EQ options.
- Fade: Touch the F or R button for more sound from the front or rear speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the front and rear speakers.
- Balance: Touch the L or R button for more sound from the left or right speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the left and right speakers.

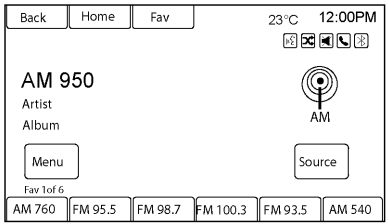
Finding a Station

Press SOURCE or SRCE on the faceplate or SRC on the steering wheel controls to select AM, FM, Pandora, Stitcher, CD, USB, AUX, and Bluetooth Audio.

Turn the TUNE/MENU knob to find a radio station. To select a preset station, press FAV to scroll through the favourite pages and then touch a preset button on the radio or the screen button.

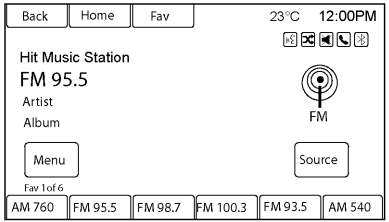
Seeking a Station

Press ⏮ SEEK ⏭ to search for a station.



AM

1. Touch the AM screen button on the Home Page or select AM by pressing SOURCE or SRCE on the faceplate or SRC on the steering wheel controls, or say “Tune AM” or “AM” through voice recognition.
2. Touch the Menu screen button to display the AM stations.
3. Touch to select an option. To update the station list, touch Update AM Station List.



FM

1. Touch the FM screen button on the Home Page or select FM by pressing SOURCE or SRCE on the faceplate or SRC on the steering wheel controls, or say “Tune FM” or “FM” through voice recognition.
2. Touch the Menu screen button to display the FM stations.
3. Touch to select an option.

Storing Radio Station Presets

Up to 36 preset stations can be stored. AM and FM can be mixed.

1. From the AM or FM main page, touch and hold one of the preset screen buttons at the bottom of the screen. After a few seconds, a beep is heard and the new preset information displays on that screen button.
2. Repeat for each preset.

Mixed-Band Presets

Each favourite page can store six preset stations. The presets within a page can be different radio bands.

To scroll through the pages, press FAV or the Fav screen button on the top bar. The current page number displays above the preset buttons. The stored stations for each favourite page display on the preset buttons.

To change the number of favourite pages displayed:

1. Touch Config on the Home Page.
2. Touch Radio Settings.
3. Touch Number of Favourite Pages.

Recalling a Preset Station

To recall a preset station from a favourites page, do one of the following:

- Touch the Fav screen button at the top bar to display the preset pop-up. Touch one of the preset screen buttons to go to the selected preset station.
- In the AM or FM main page, touch one of the preset screen buttons to go to the selected preset station.

Radio Data System (RDS)

RDS features are available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information. With RDS, the radio can:

- Seek to stations broadcasting the selected type of programming.
- Receive announcements concerning local and national emergencies.
- Display messages from radio stations.

This system relies on receiving specific information from these stations and only works when the information is available. It is possible that a radio station could broadcast incorrect information that causes the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

When information is broadcast from the current FM station, the station name or call letters display on the audio screen. RDS can provide a program type (PTY) for current programming and the name of the program being broadcasted.

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as mobile phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km. Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that

automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

Mobile Phone Usage

Mobile phone usage can cause interference with the vehicle's radio.

Backglass Antenna

The AM-FM antenna is integrated with the rear window demister in the rear window. Do not scratch the inside surface or damage the lines in the glass. If the inside surface is damaged, it could interfere with radio reception. For proper radio reception, the antenna connector needs to be properly attached to the post on the glass.

If equipped, an open sunroof may affect performance.

If attaching a mobile phone antenna to the glass, attach it between the grid lines.

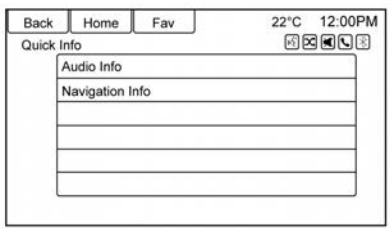
⚠ Caution

Using a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside rear window can damage the rear window antenna and/or the rear window demister. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not clear the inside rear window with sharp objects.

⚠ Caution

Do not apply aftermarket glass tinting with metallic film. The metallic film in some tinting materials will interfere with or distort the incoming radio reception. Any damage caused to the backglass antenna due to metallic tinting materials will not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Quick Info



Quick Info gives access to quick information on Audio playing and Navigation (if equipped).

To access, touch Quick Info on the Home Page or the INFO button on the faceplate. Depending on the system and if the options are available for that region, some options may be greyed out.

Audio Info: Displays information on the current item playing.

Navigation Info: Displays current location information. *Destination on page 7-40*.

Pandora Internet Radio

Pandora® is a free Internet radio service that streams personalised radio stations based on artists, songs, genres, and comedians. Create stations using the Pandora website or smartphone application, then use 👍 (thumbs up) or 👎 (thumbs down) to personalise stations. To set up an account, or for more information, go to www.pandora.com.

A phone or tablet with Internet connection and the Pandora application installed is required. Personal mobile phone data plans are used. Make sure the latest version is installed on the device and the volume is turned up.

To install Pandora:

- On an Android™ phone or Android tablet, go to the Android Play Store and search for Pandora. Install to the phone, not to the SD card.
- On a BlackBerry® phone, go to the BlackBerry App World™ and search for Pandora.
- On an iPhone®, iPad®, or iPod touch®, go to the iTunes® Store and search for Pandora.

Launching Pandora

Connect the iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch to the USB port, or connect an Android or BlackBerry through Bluetooth. See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-33* or *Bluetooth on page 7-61*. For first-time use, set up stations before connecting to the vehicle. The Pandora icon will be available on the Home Page and the source pop-up displays if the latest application is installed on the device.

Using the iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad

1. Plug the device into the USB port. The phone screen must be unlocked.
2. To launch, do one of the following:
   - Launch the application on the device.
   - Touch Pandora on the Home Page.

- Press ✆ / 🎤 and say “Tune Pandora.”
- Accept any notifications on the screen of the device.

To relaunch Pandora, press SOURCE or SRCE on the faceplate or SRC on the steering wheel controls.

If nothing happens when the available Pandora screen button is touched, download the latest Pandora application and retry.

Pandora will always be highlighted on the Home Page when an iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch is connected using the USB port. To use, log into your account.

If the “Please See Device” message is shown, the login screen may display on the device.

If the “Please Unlock the Phone or Restart the App and Try again” message is shown, then your phone may be locked. Unlock the phone, close the app, then restart the app make sure the Home Page is visible on the phone.

If Pandora is shut down on the phone or another audio app is used, Pandora may not start on the next ignition cycle. If iPod source is selected, it may show iPod and then switch to Pandora.

Using an Android Phone

1. Pair the Android phone using Bluetooth.
2. Use one of the following to launch:
   - Launch the application on the device.
   - Touch Pandora on the Home Page.
   - Press ✆ / 🎤 and say “Tune Pandora.”

After Pandora has been launched, press SOURCE or SRCE on the faceplate or SRC on the steering wheel controls to access Pandora features.

If nothing happens when the available Pandora screen button is touched, download the latest Pandora application and retry.

If the “Please See Device” message is shown, the login screen may display on the device.

If the “Please Unlock the Phone or Restart the App and Try again” message is shown then your phone may be locked. Unlock the phone, close the app, and then restart the app to ensure proper communication.

Using a BlackBerry Phone

The phone must be unlocked. To launch Pandora service:

1. Pair the BlackBerry phone using Bluetooth.
2. Use one of the following to launch:
   - Launch the application on the device.
   - Touch Pandora on the Home Page.

- Press ✆ / 🎤 and say “Tune Pandora.”

After Pandora has been launched, press SOURCE or SRCE on the faceplate or SRC on the steering wheel controls to access Pandora features.

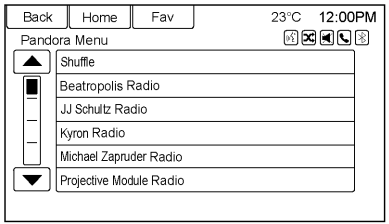
If nothing happens when the available Pandora screen button is touched, download the latest Pandora application and retry.

If the “Please See Device” message is shown, the login screen may display on the device.

If the “Please Unlock the Phone or Restart the App and Try again” message is shown, then your phone may be locked. Unlock the phone, close the app, then restart the app to ensure proper communication.

Pandora Menus

Touch Menu on the Pandora main page.



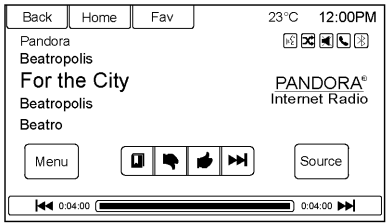
Pandora has a menu system with the following:

Shuffle: Touch to play the stations in random order.

Touch a user-created station to play from the displayed list.

Pandora Features

Pandora has features to rate tracks, skip tracks, or change stations.



(Bookmarks): Touch while playing a track to bookmark either the track or the artist. Bookmarks are viewable on www.pandora.com.

(Thumbs Down): When touched, Pandora stores the information, changes to the next track, and does not play the track on this station again. This helps Pandora choose which tracks should not play on this station. This feature is only available on user-created stations.

(Thumbs Up): When touched, Pandora stores this information and is highlighted for the remainder of

the track. This helps Pandora choose which tracks should play on this station.

⏭ **(Next Track):** When touched, Pandora changes to the next track.

⏵/⏸ **(Play/Pause):** Touch ⏵/⏸ on the radio faceplate to pause playback. Touch again to resume.

Tuning Pandora Stations: When Pandora is playing, use the ✆ / button on the steering wheel to tune to any Pandora station on the device.

1. Press the ✆ / button on the steering wheel.
2. Say “Tune Pandora <Classic Rock> Radio.”

Pandora voice control will not work until Pandora is launched the first time during that ignition cycle.

Pandora Skip Limit

Pandora limits the number of skips allowed on their service. When the skip limit is reached, 👎 will not skip the currently playing track, but 👎 feedback will be recorded.

Pandora Advertisement

Pandora may display advertisements. Artist name and track title will not be displayed and the skip track button is not available.

Switching Between Pandora and Stitcher

To switch between Pandora and Stitcher, touch the application icon on the iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad. This is not required for Android devices. See *Stitcher Internet Radio on page 7-21*.

Pandora Troubleshooting

Unable to Connect Device to Vehicle

If the device is unable to connect to the USB or Bluetooth:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Open and close the driver door, wait about 30 seconds and try to connect the device again.

Unable to Start Pandora

If the device is unable to launch Pandora:

- Check that the latest version of Pandora is installed.
- Check that there is an active account logged into Pandora.
- Have at least one station created.

- For Android and BlackBerry devices, check that the device is paired with the vehicle, and the Bluetooth icon on the display is highlighted.
- For iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad devices, check that the USB cable is connected to the USB port and the screen is unlocked.
- Close Pandora on the device and launch again. Devices that allow multitasking may require an extra step to quit the Pandora application. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide.

Thumbs Up or Thumbs Down Error

If there is an error trying to rate a track with the 👎 or 👍 buttons, an error message will display. Touch OK to retry.

Loss of Audio

Loss of Pandora audio can happen in different ways:

- Weak or lost data connection.
- Device needs to be charged.
- Application needs to be relaunched.
- Connection between phone and radio lost.
- If any iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad is connected to Bluetooth and the dock connector, go to the Airplay icon on the device and select dock connector or disconnect and reconnect the dock connector on the device.
- The volume is too low. Turn up the volume on the device.
- The battery saver and task manager applications on the phone can cause Pandora to function incorrectly. Remove those apps from the phone or remove Pandora and Bluetooth from the task lists.

If the connection is lost between the application and device, a message “Please Unlock the Phone or Restart the App and Try again” will display. Touch OK to retry.

If touching OK does not clear the issue on the phone, see "Please Unlock the Phone or Restart the App and Try again” under "Common Pandora Messages" following.

Common Pandora Messages

Please See Device: When not logged in or when authentication failed, see the device. Touch OK to continue.

Paused or Audio Paused: Playback is paused on the radio or on the device. Touch ▶/II or play on the device.

No Stations Found: Logged in but no stations have been created. Touch OK to continue.

Please Unlock the Phone or Restart the App and Try again: Communication failure between the radio and the phone application, or the device is locked.

Devices that allow multitasking may require an extra step to quit the Pandora application. Close Pandora on the device and launch again.

Unlock the phone and check that Home Page is shown on the phone/device.

See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide.

See www.pandora.com/help for more information. If the service will not work, see your dealer for assistance.

Stitcher Internet Radio

Stitcher SmartRadio™ is an Internet radio service that streams news, sports, and entertainment shows through the audio system. Create personalised, on-demand stations or discover new shows through Stitcher's preset stations. To set up an account, download the application from the Android Market or iTunes Store, or go to www.stitcher.com.

A phone or tablet with Internet connection is required for this application. Personal mobile phone data plans are used. Make sure the latest version is installed on the device and the volume on the device is turned up.

BlackBerry phones are not supported for this application.

To install Stitcher:

- On an Android phone or tablet with Internet connection, go to the Android Play Store, search for Stitcher, and install to the phone, not to the SD card.
- On an iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch, go to the iTunes store and search for Stitcher.

Launching Stitcher

Connect the iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch to the USB port, or connect Android through Bluetooth. See *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-33* or *Bluetooth on page 7-61*. For first-time use, set up the stations before connecting to the vehicle. The Stitcher icon will be available on the Home Page and source pop-up displays if the latest application is installed on the device.

Using the iPhone, iPod Touch, or iPad

1. Plug the device into the USB port. The phone screen must be unlocked.
2. Use one of the following to launch:
   - Touch the application on the device.
   - Touch Stitcher on the Home Page.

- Press ✆ / 🎤 and say “Tune Stitcher.”
- Accept any notifications on the screen of the device.

3. If Stitcher does not begin playing, select a category and then a station.

After Stitcher has been launched, press SOURCE or SRCE on the faceplate, or SRC on the steering wheel controls to access Stitcher features.

If nothing happens when the available Stitcher screen button is touched, download the latest Stitcher application and retry.

Stitcher will always be highlighted on the Home Page when an iPhone, iPad, or iPod touch is connected using the USB port. To use, log into your account.

If the “Please See Device” message is shown, the login screen may display on the device.

If the “Please Unlock the Phone or Restart the App and Try again” message is shown, then the phone may be locked. Unlock the phone, close the app, then restart the app and make sure the Home Page is visible on the phone/device.

Using an Android Phone

1. Pair the Android phone using Bluetooth.
2. Use one of the following to launch:
   - Touch the application on the device.
   - Touch Stitcher on the Home Page.
   - Press ✆ / 🎤 and say “Tune Stitcher.”
3. If Stitcher does not begin playing, select a category and then a station.

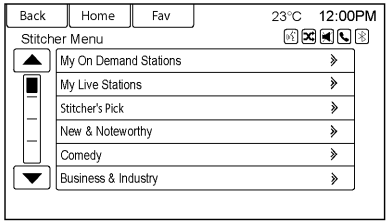
After Stitcher has been launched, press SOURCE or SRCE on the faceplate, or SRC on the steering wheel controls to access Stitcher features.

If nothing happens when the available Stitcher screen button is touched, download the latest Stitcher application and retry.

If the “Please See Device” message is shown, the login screen may display on the device.

If the “Please Unlock the Phone or Restart the App and Try again” message is shown, then your phone may be locked. Unlock the phone, close the app, then restart the app to ensure proper communication.

Stitcher Menus



Touch Menu on the Stitcher main page.

Stitcher has a menu system with the following:

My On Demand Stations: Displays a list of favourite stations and shows.

Select and store programs as favourites on the device. Favourite station lists can be created to include favourite shows which can be accessed through My On Demand Stations.

Stitcher Station Categories: Displays categories by topic.

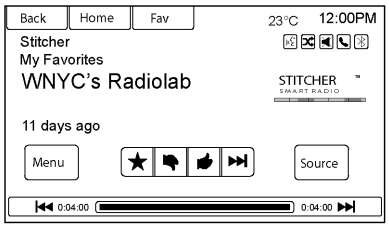
When a category then sub-category is selected, the radio will start playing the first program in that sub-category.

Turn the TUNE/MENU knob to display the first 24 stations of that sub-category.

Current Station Playlist: While listening to a show, turn the TUNE/MENU knob to display the menu list of shows available for the current station.

Stitcher Features

Stitcher service has features to rate or skip shows, or change stations.



★ **(Favourites):** When touched, the current show is added to the favourites station.

👎 **(Thumbs Down):** When touched, Stitcher changes to the next show. This helps Stitcher provide a personalised listening experience.

👍 **(Thumbs Up):** When touched, Stitcher stores this information and 👍 is highlighted for the remainder of the show. This helps Stitcher provide a personalised listening experience.

⏭ **(Next Show):** When touched, Stitcher changes to the next show.

⏵/⏸ **(Play/Pause):** Touch on the radio to pause playback. Touch again to resume.

Stitcher Advertisement

Stitcher may display advertisements. Artist name and title may not be displayed and the skip track button is not available.

Switching Between Pandora and Stitcher

To switch between Pandora (if equipped) and Stitcher, touch the application icon on the iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad. This is not required for Android devices. See *Pandora Internet Radio on page 7-16*.

Stitcher Troubleshooting

Unable to Connect Device to Vehicle

If the device is unable to connect to the USB or Bluetooth:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Open and close the driver door, wait about 30 seconds and try to connect the device again.

The battery saver and task manager applications on the phone can cause Stitcher to function incorrectly. Remove those apps from the phone or remove Stitcher and Bluetooth from the task lists.

Unable to Start Stitcher

If the device is unable to launch Stitcher:

- Check that the latest version of Stitcher is installed.
- Check that there is an active account logged into Stitcher.
- For Android devices, check that the device is paired with the vehicle, and the Bluetooth icon on the display is highlighted.
- For iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad devices, check that the USB cable is connected to the USB port, the screen is unlocked, and the Home Page is showing.
- Close Stitcher on the device and launch again. Devices that allow multitasking may require an extra step to quit the Stitcher application. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide.

Loss of Audio

Loss of Stitcher audio can happen due to:

- Weak or lost data connection.
- Device needs to be charged.
- Application needs to be relaunched.
- Connection between phone and radio is lost.
- If any iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad is connected to Bluetooth and the dock connector, go to the Airplay icon on the device and select dock connector or disconnect and reconnect the dock connector on the device.
- The volume is too low. Turn up the volume on the device.

If the connection is lost between the application and device, a message “Please Unlock the Phone or Restart the App and Try again” will display. Touch OK to retry.

If touching OK does not clear the issue, see “Please Unlock the Phone or Restart the App and Try again” under “Common Stitcher Messages” following.

Common Stitcher Messages

Please Try Again Later: A general error has occurred. A data connection may be unavailable due to a weak or lost signal or the Stitcher service being temporarily down. Touch OK to continue.

Paused or Audio Paused: Playback is paused on the radio or on the device. Touch ⏵/⏸ or play on the device.

Please See Device: When not logged in or when authentication failed, see the device. Touch OK to continue. Disconnect the phone from the radio and follow the Stitcher account login process on the phone.

No Stations Found: Logged in but no stations have been created. Touch OK to continue.

Please Choose a New Station: The end of the station has been reached and there is no more content to play. Select a new station through the Stitcher menu.

Please Unlock the Phone or Restart the App and Try again: Communication failure between the radio and the phone application, or the device is locked.

See www.stitcher.com/help for more information. If the service will not work, send an e-mail to feedback@stitcher.com or see your dealer for assistance.

Audio Players

CD Player

The CD player is capable of playing:

- Most audio CDs
- CD-R
- CD-RW
- MP3, unprotected WMA, and AAC formats

When playing any compatible recordable disc, the sound quality may be reduced due to the disc, the method of recording, the quality of the music recorded, or how the disc has been handled.

There may be increased skipping, or difficulty reading recorded tracks, finding tracks, and/or loading and ejecting. If these problems occur, check the disc for damage or try a known good disc.

To avoid damage to the CD player:

- Do not use scratched or damaged discs.

- Do not apply labels to discs. The labels could get caught in the player.
- Insert only one disc at a time.
- Keep the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.
- Use a marking pen to label the top of the disc.

Loading and Ejecting Discs

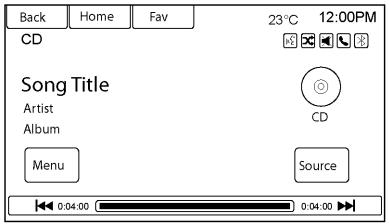
To load a disc:

1. Turn the vehicle on.
2. Insert a disc into the slot, right side up. The player pulls it in the rest of the way. If the disc is damaged or improperly loaded, there is an error and the disc ejects.

The disc automatically plays once loaded.

Press ⏏ to eject a disc from the CD player. If the disc is not removed within a short period of time, it is automatically pulled back into the player.

Playing an Audio CD



1. Touch the CD screen button on the Home Page or select CD from the source pop-up to display the CD main page.
2. Touch the Menu screen button to display the menu options.
3. Touch to select the option.

On the CD main page, the track number displays and the Song, Artist, and Album information displays when available.

Use the following radio controls to play the disc:

⏵/⏸ (Play/Pause): Use to pause or resume play.

⏮ SEEK (Previous/Reverse):

- Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than five seconds, it seeks to the previous track. If longer than five seconds, the current track starts from the beginning.
- Press and hold to fast reverse through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

SEEK ⏭ (Next/Fast Forward):

- Press to seek to the next track.

- Press and hold to fast forward through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

TUNE/MENU: Turn to the right or left to select the next or previous track. Press this knob to select from the list. If a track is selected from the menu, the system plays the track and returns to the CD screen.

Error Messages

If Disc Error displays and/or the disc comes out, it could be due to:

- The disc has an invalid or unknown format.
- The disc is very hot. Try the disc again when the temperature returns to normal.
- The road is very rough. Try the disc again when the road is smoother.
- The disc is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. Try the disc again later.
- There was a problem while burning the disc.
- The label is caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, try a known good CD.

If any error continues, contact your dealer.

USB

Playing from a USB

A USB mass storage or Certified Windows Vista®/Media Transfer Protocol (MTP) device can be connected to the USB port.

The USB port is in the centre console under the armrest.

The USB icon displays when the USB device is connected.

USB Media Formats

The USB port will support the following media formats:

- MP3
- Unprotected WMA
- Unprotected AAC

Other formats may be supported.

Gracenote®

Gracenote technology embedded into the radio helps manage and navigate the USB device music collection. When a USB device is connected to the radio, Gracenote identifies the music collection and delivers the correct album, artist name, genres, and cover art on the screen. If information is missing, Gracenote will fill it in.

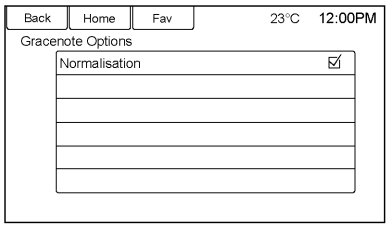
Searching Music Library Using Voice Recognition

Voice Recognition: Gracenote improves music search and navigation by identifying bands, artists, and albums names that may be hard to pronounce, irregular spellings, and nicknames as voice commands to access music. See *Voice Recognition on page 7-55*.

Normalisation: Normalisation helps to improve the voice recognition accuracy for titles that sound similar. It also helps group long lists of genres into 10 common genres. For example, there may be multiple rock genres in the media library; normalisation will group all those into one rock genre. Normalisation default is off.

To turn Normalisation on:

1. Touch Config on the Home Page.
2. Touch Radio Settings, then touch Gracenote Options.



3. Touch Normalisation to turn on or off.

Cover Art: The Gracenote embedded database contains cover art or album art information for the music on the USB device. If the music is recognised by Gracenote and does not have cover art, Gracenote will use the cover art found in the embedded database and display it on the radio. User predefined cover art will always be used first. If cover art is found Gracenote will use generic Genre graphics or images of artists.

More Like This

The Gracenote database contains attributes for music, such as genre, era of music, region, artist type, mood, etc. Use this to create a playlist of up to 30 songs "more like this" currently listened to songs. This playlist will be stored in the Playlist Menu when the device is reconnected.

Use the touch screen or voice recognition to access the Playlist menu. See “Voice Recognition Commands” in *Voice Recognition on page 7-55*.

Gracenote Indexing

While Gracenote is indexing, infotainment features are available including selecting music from the menu. Voice recognition music will not be available until the radio has completed indexing the device. Devices with more music may take longer to index. The device will index when plugged into the radio for the first time. When Indexing is removed from the screen, the radio is ready to support music search. On the next connection or ignition cycle, Indexing will show briefly on the screen. The radio is searching for changes to the device and preparing the music list. If there are no changes, the voice recognition music search will be available. The radio will index and store two devices with up to 10,000 songs on each device.

USB MP3 Player and USB Drives

- The USB MP3 players and USB drives connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).
- Hard disk drives are not supported.
- The radio will not be able to play back write-protected music.
- File system supported: FAT32.
- The following restrictions apply for the data stored on a USB MP3 player or USB device:
  - Maximum folder structure depth: eight levels.
  - Maximum number of MP3/WMA files that can be displayed: 10,000.
  - Playlist entries must be in the form of relative paths.
  - The system attribute for folders/files that contain audio data must not be set.

To play a USB device, do one of the following:

- Connect the USB and it begins to play.
- Touch the Now Playing screen button on the Home Page.
- Press SOURCE or SRCE to scroll until the USB source screen is available.
- Press ✆ / 🎤 on the steering wheel controls to select songs by Artist, Album, Song Title, or Song Genre. See *Voice Recognition on page 7-55*.

The following playlist formats are supported:

- M3U (Standard and Extended)
- iTunes
- PLS (Standard)
- WAX
- ASX
- RMP

The radio supports plugging a mobile phone in as a USB drive as long as the mobile phone supports USB mass storage class or has USB disc drive support enabled.

While the USB source is active, use the following to operate USB function:

TUNE/MENU Knob: Turn to scroll through the list. Turn quickly to fast scroll alphabetically through large lists.

▷/‖ **(Play/Pause):** Touch to start, pause, or resume play of the current media source.

⏮ **SEEK (Previous/Reverse):**

- Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than five seconds, the previous track plays. If playing longer than five seconds, the current track restarts.

- Press and hold to reverse quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

SEEK⏭ (Next/Fast Forward):

- Press to seek to the next track.
- Press and hold to advance quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

USB Menu

The following are available through the USB Menu:

Shuffle: Touch to play the tracks randomly. Touch again to stop shuffle.

Play More Like This:

1. Touch to automatically create a playlist of songs that are like the song currently playing.
2. The radio will show “Playlist Creation Succeeded” and continue playing the current song.

Delete Automatic Playlist: Touch to delete a More Like this playlist.

Folders: Touch to open a folder list to access the files within the folder structure.

Play Lists:

1. Touch to view the playlists on the USB.
2. Select a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Artists:

1. Touch to view the list of artists on the USB.
2. Select an artist name to view a list of all albums by the artist.
3. To select a song, touch Songs or touch an album and then select a song from the list.

Albums:

1. Touch to view the albums on the USB.
2. Select the album to view a list of all songs on the album.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Genres:

1. Touch to view the genres on the USB.
2. Select a genre to view a list of all songs of that genre.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Songs:

1. Touch to display a list of all songs on the USB.
2. Songs are displayed as they are stored on the disc. To begin playback, select a song from the list.

File System and Naming

The songs, artists, albums, and genres are taken from the file's song information and are only displayed if

present. The radio displays the file name as the track name if the song information is not available.

Playing from an iPod

This feature supports the following iPod models:

- iPod classic® (6th generation)
- iPod nano® (3G, 4G, 5G, and 6G)
- iPod touch® (1G, 2G, 3G, and 4G)

There may be problems with the operation and function in the following situations:

- When connecting an iPod on which a more recent version of the firmware is installed than is supported by the infotainment system.
- When connecting an iPod on which firmware from other providers is installed.

To connect an iPod:

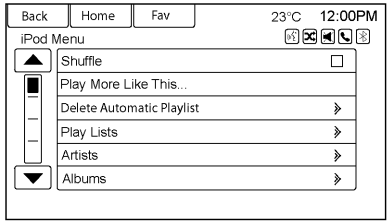
1. Connect one end of the standard iPod USB cable to the iPod's dock connector.
2. Connect the other end to the USB port in the centre console.

iPod music information displays on the radio's display and begins playing through the vehicle's audio system.

The iPod battery recharges automatically while the vehicle is on. The iPod shuts off and stops charging when the vehicle is shut off.

If the iPod is an unsupported model, it can still be listened to in the vehicle by connecting to the auxiliary input jack using a standard 3.5 mm stereo cable.

iPod Menu



Shuffle: Touch to play the tracks randomly. Touch again to stop shuffle.

Use the iPod Menu to select:

Play More Like This: Allows the radio to create playlists with songs/tracks that are similar to what is being listen to. The radio will create a playlist with up to 30 similar songs. The playlist will appear in the Playlist category of the menu for future listening.

1. Touch to automatically create a playlist of songs that are like the song currently playing.

2. The radio will show "Indexing" and continue playing the current song.

Delete Automatic Playlist: Touch to delete a More Like This playlist.

Play Lists:

1. Touch to view the playlists on the iPod.
2. Select a playlist name to view a list of all songs in the playlist.
3. Select the song from the list to begin playback.

Artists:

1. Touch to view the artists on the iPod.
2. Select an artist name to view a list of all albums with songs by the artist.
3. Select an album.
4. Select the song from the list to begin playback.

Albums:

1. Touch to view the albums on the iPod.
2. Select an album name to view a list of all songs on the album or select Songs to view all songs on the iPod.
3. Select the song from the list to begin playback.

Genres:

1. Touch to view the genres on the iPod.
2. Select a genre name to view a list of artists of that genre.
3. Select an artist to view all albums of that genre.
4. Select Album to view songs.
5. Select the song from the list to begin playback.

Songs:

1. Touch to view a list of all songs on the iPod.
2. Select the song from the list to begin playback.

Podcast:

1. Touch to view the podcasts on the iPod.
2. Select a podcast name to begin playback.

Composers:

1. Touch to view the composers on the iPod.
2. Select the composer to view a list of songs by that composer.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Audio Books:

1. Touch to view the audio books on the iPod.
2. Select the audio book from the list to begin playback.

Playing from an iPhone or iPad

This feature supports the following iPhone or iPad models:

- iPhone® (2G, 3G, 3GS, 4, 4S, and 5)
- iPad® (1G, 2G)

Follow the same instructions as stated previously for using an iPod. To use voice recognition to play music, say “Play USB,” “Play Artist,” “Play Album,” “Play Song,” or “Play Genre.” See *Voice Recognition on page 7-55*.

iPad and iPhone Troubleshooting

When an iPhone and iPad are connected through USB and Bluetooth, the audio may not be heard when an iPhone or iPad source on the radio is selected. If a phone call is received while listening to an iPad and there is no audio for the iPad after the call, then go to the Airplay icon on the device and select dock connector, or disconnect and reconnect the dock connector on the device.

USB troubleshooting

If the device is not being recognised or the music is missing screen information, restore the radio defaults:

1. Touch Config.
2. Touch Vehicle Settings.
3. Touch Return to Factory Settings.
4. Touch Yes.

Pair the phone again and the device will have to index again.

Bluetooth Audio and Voice Recognition

See *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-34* and *Voice Recognition on page 7-55* for information using voice recognition with Bluetooth audio.

Make sure all devices have the latest software downloaded.

Auxiliary Devices

This vehicle has an auxiliary input jack in the front console. Possible auxiliary audio sources include:

- Laptop computer
- MP3 player
- Tape player

This jack is not an audio output. Do not plug headphones into the auxiliary input jack. Set up any auxiliary device while the vehicle is in P (Park).

Connect a 3.5 mm cable from the auxiliary device to the auxiliary input jack. When a device is connected, the system automatically begins playing audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

If an auxiliary device has already been connected, but a different source is currently active, do one of the following:

- Press SOURCE or SRCE to scroll all of the available audio source screens, until the AUX source screen is selected.
- Say “Play Front AUX” using voice recognition to play the auxiliary device . See *Voice Recognition on page 7-55*.

Bluetooth Audio

If equipped, music may be played from a paired Bluetooth device. See “Pairing a Phone/Device” under *Bluetooth on page 7-61*.

To play music through a Bluetooth device:

1. Power on the device, pair, and connect the device.
2. Music can be launched by doing one of the following:
   - Touch the Bluetooth Audio screen button on the Home Page.
   - Press SOURCE or SRCE until Bluetooth Audio is selected.
   - Press the SRC button on the steering wheel controls until Bluetooth Audio is selected. See *Steering Wheel Controls on page 7-7*.
   - Use voice recognition. See *Voice Recognition on page 7-55*.

The music can be controlled by either the infotainment controls or the controls on the device.

When a phone is connected to the system through Bluetooth Audio the phone notifications and sounds may not be heard on the phone until Bluetooth is disconnected. Notification features may vary based on the phone. Check the phone manufacturer's information for notification support.

Bluetooth Audio Menu

Touch the Menu screen button and the following may display:

Shuffle: Press the TUNE/MENU knob to turn shuffle on or off. Not all devices support the shuffle feature.

When selecting Bluetooth audio, the Bluetooth device music player may not open depending on the status of the device. All devices launch and play back audio differently. Make sure the correct audio source is playing on the device for Bluetooth audio playback on the radio. When the vehicle is not moving, use the device to begin playback.

When selecting Bluetooth audio as a source, the radio may source to the Bluetooth Audio Paused screen with no audio playing. Touch play on the device or push ▷/‖ to begin

playback. This may happen depending on how the device communicates over Bluetooth.

Some phones support sending Bluetooth music information to display on the radio. When the radio receives this information, it will check to see if any album art is available and display it.

When playing music on the radio from a Bluetooth device, make sure the Bluetooth device is unlocked and the intended music application is showing on the home screen.

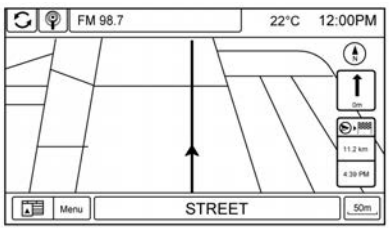
For iPhone/iPod touch and iPad devices, Bluetooth Audio will not work if the device is connected through the USB and Bluetooth at the same time.

Navigation

Using the Navigation System

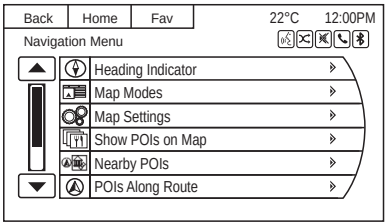
Use the NAV button on the faceplate or the Navigation button on the Home Page to access the navigation map.

Press the NAV button again to change between alternative views of the normal split and full map views.

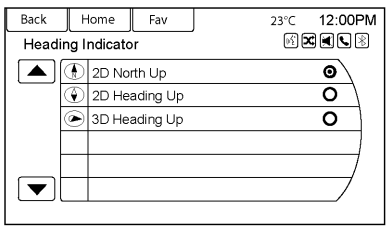


The Menu screen button at the bottom left side of the display accesses the Navigation Menu.

The touch-sensitive buttons available are:



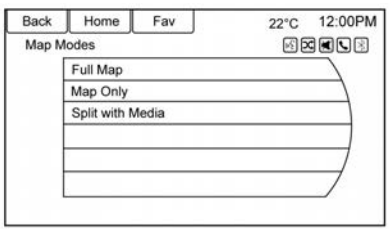
Heading Indicator



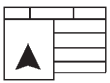
Touch Heading Indicator to display the Map View. There are three indicator settings:

- 2D North Up: Displays North at the top of the map screen regardless of the direction the vehicle is travelling.
- 2D Heading Up: Displays the direction the vehicle is travelling. The shaded triangle icon points North.
- 3D Heading Up: Is the same as 2D Heading Up, but the map is in 3D.

Map Modes

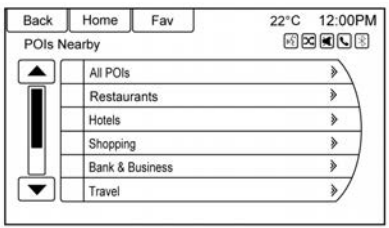


Touch to change the view of the maps while using the navigation function. The system offers a variety of full and split views. Some views are only selectable when route guidance is active.



An alternative method to change the view of the maps would be to touch the map mode icon.

Nearby POIs

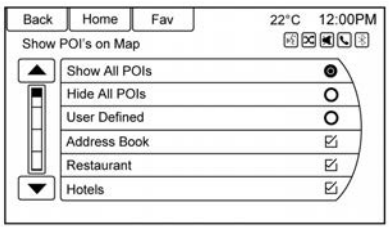


Touch to display a search list of nearby POIs. Select the desired POI.

POIs Along Route

Touch to display a search list of POIs that lie along or near the route to the destination. Select the desired POI.

Show POIs on Map



Touch to customise which major POI categories are displayed on the map.

Switch Route Time/Destination

Touch to customise the arrival/travel time and waypoint/destination information displayed in the main map screen.

Current Position Info

Touch to display a split screen showing detailed information about the vehicle position. This feature can also be accessed by touching the vehicle information tab on the lower centre of the display. The location can be saved to the Address Book by touching Save in the split screen.

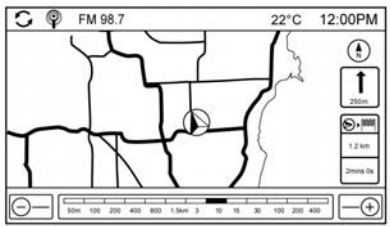
Destination Position Info

Touch to display a split map screen showing the next waypoint/ destination. The location can be saved to the Address Book by touching Save in the split screen.

Map Adjustments

The system lets you adjust the scale of view on the map. Also, as you drive, the map scrolls automatically based on the direction of travel.

Map Scales



There are two methods to change the map scale:

- Turn the TUNE/MENU knob clockwise or anti-clockwise to zoom out or in.
- Touch the Map Scale + or − button on the bottom corners of the map screen to change the zoom level.

  The map scale bar times out if the zoom level is not changed within a few seconds.

Scroll Features

- To scroll within the map, touch anywhere on the map screen and the scroll symbol displays.
- Tap the map to centre at that location on the screen.
- Touch and hold the screen in any direction outside the scroll symbol to scroll the map in that direction.

- Scroll speed increases when touching closer to the edge of the screen.
- Press NAV on the faceplate to exit map scrolling and return to the current vehicle location on the map.

Touch the cycling arrows at the top of the map screen to toggle from the normal top bar (Home and Fav) to the audio information bar.

Maps

This section includes basic information about the map database.

The maps are stored in an internal flash memory that is used in the navigation system.

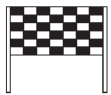
Detailed Areas

Road network attributes are contained in the map database for detailed areas. Attributes include information such as street names, street addresses, and turn restrictions. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads, and residential roads. The detailed areas include points of interest (POIs) such as restaurants, airports, banks, hospitals, police stations, petrol stations, tourist attractions, and historical monuments. The map database may not include data for newly constructed areas or map database corrections after the production of the infotainment system. The navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas.

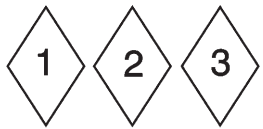
Navigation Symbols

Following are the most common symbols that appear on a map screen.

The vehicle symbol indicates the current position and heading direction of the vehicle on the map.



The destination symbol marks the final destination after a route has been planned.



The waypoint symbol marks one or more set waypoints.

A waypoint is a stopover destination point added to the planned route.

The estimated time and distance to the destination are displayed.

If waypoints have been added to the current route, each waypoint destination displays estimated time and distance.

This symbol indicates that the map view is North up: North up displays North at the top of the map screen regardless of the direction the vehicle is travelling.

Select this screen symbol to change the view to Heading up or 3D.

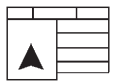
This symbol indicates that the map view is Heading up.

Heading up view displays the direction the vehicle is travelling at the top of the map screen. The shaded triangle indicates North.

Touch this screen symbol to change to 3D mode.

The 3D symbol is the same as the Heading up symbol, but the map is in 3D.

The No GPS symbol appears when there is no Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite signal.



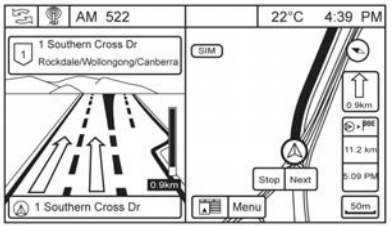
This symbol at the bottom of a map screen changes the current map mode screen.

This symbol on the right of the map screen displays the speed limit while on a route. The speed limit may not be accurate due to changes since the map data was created. Always follow the posted speed limit on the road.

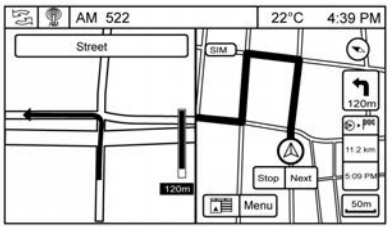
Driving on a Route

Urgent Manoeuvre Alert

The system will give an indication that the next manoeuver is close.

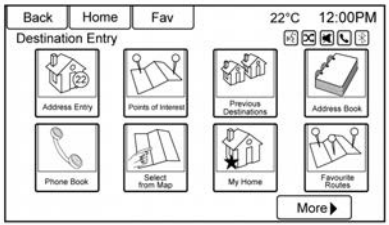


Driving on a Highway



Driving on a Residential Road

Destination



If route guidance is not active, touch the Destination Entry screen button on the Home Page to access the Destination Entry screen. Several options can be selected to plan a route by entering destinations. Some destination entry items such as Previous Destinations, Address Book, and My Home may be greyed out if no destination was previously entered or saved.

Alpha-Numeric Keyboard

Letters of the alphabet, symbols, punctuation, and numbers, when available, display on the navigation screen as alpha/numeric keyboards. The alpha keyboard displays when data needs to be entered.

ABC or QWERTY: Touch to toggle between ABC or QWERTY keyboard character layouts.

ÄÖ: Touch to access an alternate language keyboard.

Sym: Use to select symbols.

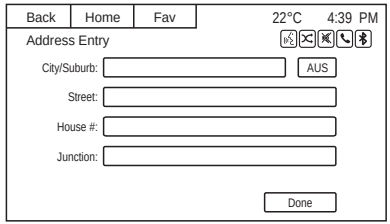
Space: Use to enter a space between characters or the words of a name.

Delete: Touch to delete an incorrect character that has been selected.

Address Entry

Touch the Address screen button to display the Address Entry screen. Set a route by entering the city/suburb name, street name, house number, and street Junction.

To make name selection easier, the system highlights only characters that are available after the previously entered one.



City/Suburb: Enter a city/suburb name.

Street: Enter a street name.

House #: Enter a valid address number.

Junction: Enter a street name that intersects with the selected street.

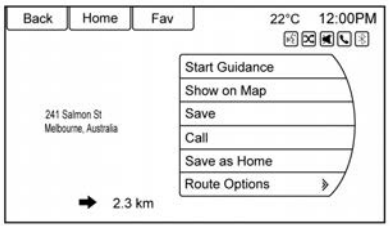
Entering the city/suburb name first:

1. Enter the city/suburb name.
2. Enter the street name. Use the Delete screen button to delete an incorrectly entered character.

   A list displays if six or fewer names are available. If there are more than six, there is a match

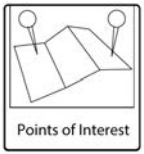
counter with a number of available streets. Touch to view the list and select the street.

3. Enter the house number.
4. Touch the Done screen button at any time and the system tries to resolve a destination based on the entered information, then displays it on the screen.

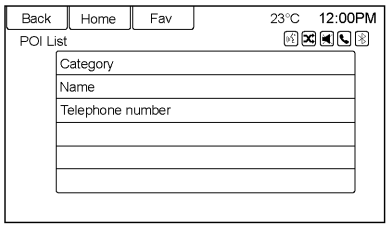


5. Touch the Start Guidance screen button and the route calculates.

Points of Interest (POI)

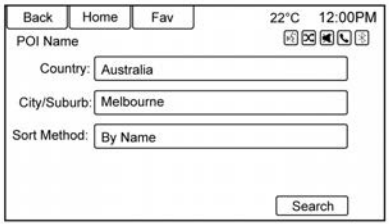


Touch the Points of Interest screen button on the Destination Entry page. Several options can be selected to plan a route.

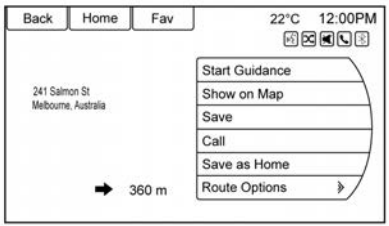


The POI entry list allows selection of a destination search by category, name, or number.

Entering by POI name:



1. Select to search By Name.
2. Make sure the correct country and city/suburb are present, then select Search.
3. Enter the POI name.
4. Select a few of the characters or spell the name in full, by using the alpha keyboard.
5. Select the Done screen button, or if the list has six or fewer items, a list of POIs will immediately display.
6. Touch the desired POI.

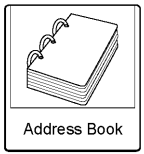


7. Touch the Start Guidance screen button and the route calculates.

Previous Destinations

Select a destination from the Previous Destination List. Up to 15 points that have been previously entered can be recalled. If the list is full, the oldest destinations are automatically deleted once the newest destinations are added.

Address Book



If no destination is saved to the address book, save a destination:

1. Touch Destination on the Home Page.
2. Enter an address using any of the destination methods (Address Entry, POI name entry, etc.).
3. On the destination confirmation screen, select Save.
4. The system displays the options Name, Number, Icon, and Done. Touch Done to save the destination.
5. To customise the address book entry, select Name, Number, or Icon.

If a destination is already saved to the address book, touch Destination Entry on the Home Page to display the Address Book screen button.

Choose a destination by selecting an address that has been stored in the address book.

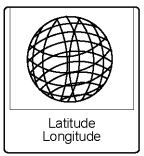
1. Touch the Address Book screen button. A list displays the address book entries.
2. Select the destination from the list.
3. Touch the Start Guidance screen button and the route calculates.

To edit Address Book entries:

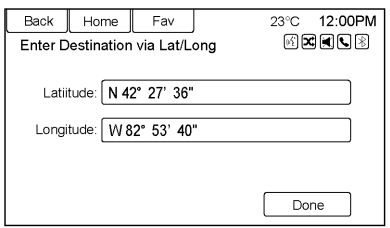
1. Select an item from the address book.
2. On the destination confirmation screen, select Edit.
3. The system displays the options Name, Number, Icon, and Delete. Touch Delete to delete the destination from the address book.

4. To customise the address book entry, select Name, Number, or Icon.

Latitude/Longitude Coordinates



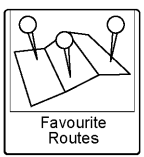
Choose a destination based on latitudinal and longitudinal coordinates.



To enter the location as coordinates, latitude and longitude:

1. Touch Destination on the Home Page. Touch the Latitude and Longitude screen button to display the screen above.
2. Select Latitude or Longitude to change. Enter the coordinates in degrees, minutes, and seconds. Then touch Back to save and exit.
3. Touch the Search screen button if the information is correct.
4. Touch the Start Guidance screen button. The route calculates.

Favourite Routes



Adding a Favourite Route:

1. Touch the Home Page Destination Entry button to display the Favourite Routes screen button.
2. Touch the Favourite Routes screen button to display New Favourite Route.
3. Select New Favourite Route and enter a favourite route name.
4. Touch OK and the display returns to the favourite routes list.
5. Select the favourite route and add a waypoint using any of the destination methods, such as address entry, POI entry, etc.

Selecting a Favourite Route:

1. Touch the Home Page Destination Entry button to display the Favourite Routes screen button.
2. Touch the Favourite Routes screen button to display a list of available favourite routes.

3. Scroll and select a favourite route.
4. Touch the Start Guidance screen button. The route calculates.

Deleting a favourite route:

1. Touch the Home Page Destination Entry button to display the Favourite Routes screen button. Touch this button to display the list of available favourite routes.
2. Scroll and select the route to be deleted.
3. Touch Edit.
4. Touch Delete Favourite Route.

Changing the route name:

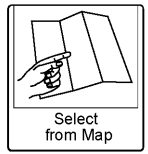
1. Touch the Home Page Destination Entry button to display the Favourite Routes screen button. Touch this button to display the list of available favourite routes.
2. Touch the Edit screen button.
3. Select Edit Name.
4. Using the keypad, enter the name.
5. Touch the Done screen button. The new name will be in the Favourite Routes Menu.

My Home

If no home destination is entered, save a destination by touching the Home Page Destination Entry button. Enter a destination using any of the destination entry methods (Address Entry, POI Entry, etc.). Select Save as Home from the destination confirmation screen.

If a destination is already saved as home, touch the Home Page Destination Entry button to display the My Home screen button. Touch this button to start route guidance.

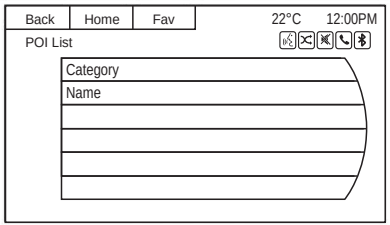
Select from Map



- Touch the Home Page Destination Entry button to display the Select from Map screen button. Touch this button to display the map screen with a scroll symbol centred on the map.
- Touch the Zoom in/out button on the screen and touch the map to locate the destination to select. Touch and hold a finger on the map to activate fast scrolling.
- Touch the Go button on the bottom of the screen to display the destination confirmation screen.
- Touch the Start Guidance screen button. The route calculates.

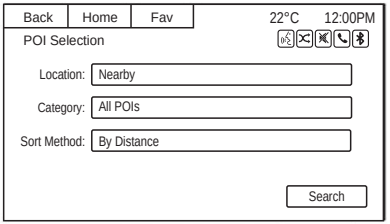
Travel Guide

Touch the Travel Guide screen button on the Destination Entry page. Several options can be selected to plan a route.

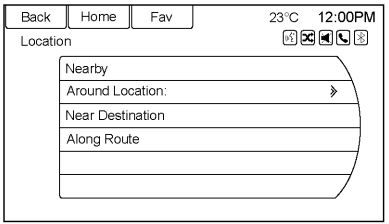


The Travel Guide POI List allows a search by category or name.

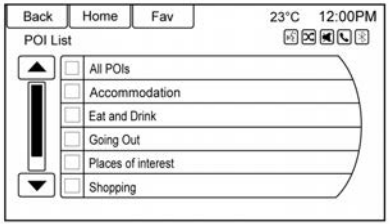
Entering by POI Category



1. Select Category from the POI Selection menu to access the POI Selection screen display.
2. Enter the necessary information by first selecting the location line item to access the Location menu.

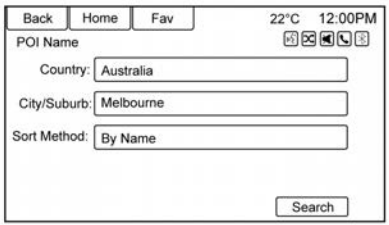


3. Select any of the line options such as Nearby.
4. Select Category from the POI Selection menu to access the POI List.

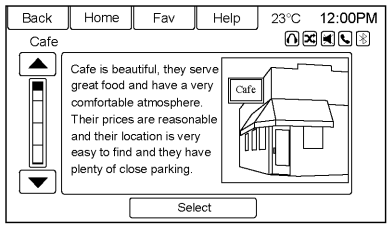


5. Select any of the line options such as All POIs.
6. Select Sort Method from the POI Selection menu to access the Search Order menu. Select one of the two options available. These options are By Distance or By Name.
7. Select Search.
8. Select the desired POI.

Entering by POI name:



1. Select to search By Name.
2. Make sure the correct country, state/province, and city are present, then select Search.
3. Enter the POI name.
4. Select a few of the characters or spell the name in full, by using the alpha keyboard.
5. Select the Done screen button, or if the list has six or fewer items, a list of POIs will immediately display.
6. Touch the desired POI.


Back
Home
Fav
Help
23°C
12:00PM
Cafe
Cafe is beautiful, they serve great food and have a very comfortable atmosphere. Their prices are reasonable and their location is very easy to find and they have plenty of close parking.
Cafe
Select

The Travel Guide POI will have some detailed information about the selection made. This information may include:

- Brief Description
- Address
- Number
- Hours of Operation
- Price
- Website

Photos may not be available for certain locations or countries.

Destination Confirmation

Multiple options are available on the destination confirmation screen:

Start Guidance: Touch to start a route calculation to the displayed destination.

Show on Map: Touch to switch to the map view with the displayed destination centred on the map.

Route Options: Touch to change route options. See “Route Options” following.

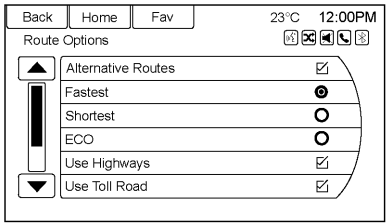
Call: Touch to initiate a phone call to the displayed phone number, if phone capability is available.

Save as Home: Touch to save the displayed destination as your home destination. The home destination will be stored at the top of the list of destinations in the address book.

Save/Edit: Touch to save the displayed destination into the address book. If the displayed

destination is already stored in the address book, Edit will show as the menu item.

Route Options



Touch to display various route options.

Alternative Routes: If enabled, the system will provide an additional screen after Start Guidance has been selected. Select Fastest, Shortest, or Eco calculated routes before selecting GO.

Fastest: This calculates for the quickest route.

Shortest: This calculates for the shortest route.

Eco: This calculates for the most fuel efficient route based on speed and distance.

Under the Route Options menu, there are route preferences that by default are all enabled.
A checkmark placed next to each preference indicates this. All of these preferences are used when calculating the route. If any of these preferences are unselected, the route will be calculated without including these preferences.

Use Highways: Deselect to avoid major roads.

Use Toll Roads: Deselect to avoid toll roads.

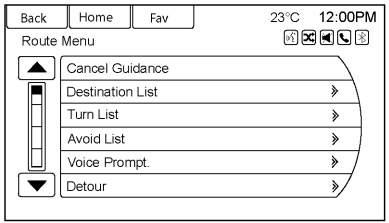
Use Ferries: Deselect to avoid ferries.

Use Tunnels: Deselect to avoid tunnels.

Use Time Restricted: Deselect to avoid time restricted roads.

Use Car Train: Deselect to avoid car trains.

Menu with Route Guidance Active

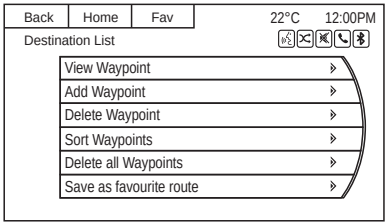


Several functions can be performed after a destination has been entered. Touch the Home Page Destination Entry screen button to access the Route Menu screen.

Cancel Guidance

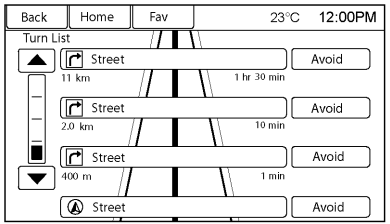
Touch Cancel Guidance to cancel the current route.

Destination List



Select Destination List to view options for organising waypoints.

Turn List



Select Turn List to view a list of manoeuvres for the entire route. Touch the Avoid screen button next to one of the turn manoeuvres to avoid a segment of roads. A maximum of eight avoided segments are allowed.

Avoid List

Select Avoid List to display a list of avoided road segments with the option to remove the avoided items from the list.

Detour

Touch Detour to display the route detour options. Select to detour the whole route or by a specific distance.

Route Options

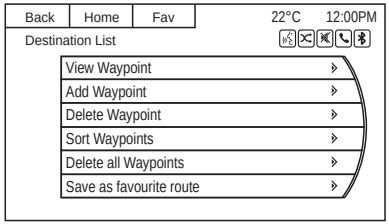
This feature can be accessed from the destination confirmation menu and Destination Menu with Route Guidance Active. See “Destination Confirmation” for more information.

Voice Prompt

Select Voice Prompt to view options to disable or manage navigation voice prompts and traffic alert prompts.

Waypoints

Up to three waypoints can be added to the current route. The waypoints can be sorted (moved) or deleted.

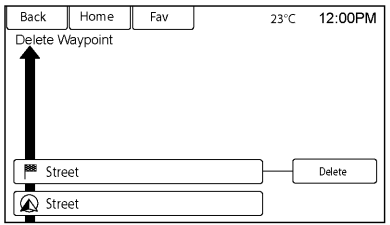


To add a waypoint:

1. From the Destination List menu, touch Add Waypoint.
2. Enter the waypoint by any of the add destination methods. The system calculates and highlights the route and the route can be started.
3. To add more waypoints, touch Add Waypoint to add the waypoint in the order desired on the route.

To delete a waypoint:

1. From the Destination menu, touch Destination List.
2. Touch Delete Waypoints.



3. Select the waypoints to be deleted. Touch the Delete screen button.

The Sort Waypoint feature allows reorganisation of the destination list.

To sort a waypoint:

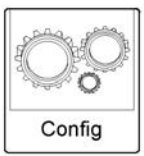
1. From the Destination menu, touch Destination List.
2. Touch Sort Waypoints.
3. Select the waypoint to move.
4. Select the location to move the waypoint to.

Instead of deleting individual waypoints, select Delete All Waypoints to delete all waypoints at the same time.

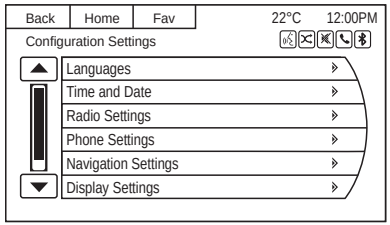
To save a destination list as a favourite route, select Save as Favourite Route.

Configure Menu

The Configuration Settings is used to adjust features and preferences, such as Sound, Radio, Nav (Navigation), Display, or Time Settings.



1. Touch the Config screen button on the Home Page.



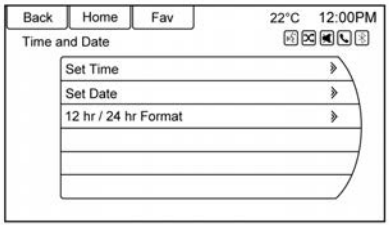
2. Touch-tap the scroll bar until the desired option displays. Select the desired settings to change. See the owner manual for information on adjusting most vehicle settings. See “Navigation Settings” and “Navigation Settings Button” in this section.

Languages

Touch the Config button on the Home Page or the CONFIG button on the faceplate to enter the menu options. Turn the TUNE/ MENU knob or touch-tap the scroll bar to scroll through the available options. Press the TUNE/ MENU knob or touch Languages to display the

languages. Select the desired language. English is the only available language.

Time and Date Settings



From the Time and Date Settings screen button, touch to display the Time and Date menu.

Set Time: Touch + or − to increase or decrease the Hours and Minutes displayed on the clock.

Set Date: Touch + or − to increase or decrease the day.

12 hr/24 hr Format: Touch the 12 Hour screen button for standard time; touch the 24 Hour screen button for military time.

Touch the Back screen button to save the adjustments.

Radio Settings

Touch the Config button on the Home Page or the CONFIG button on the faceplate to enter the menu options. Turn the TUNE/MENU knob or touch-tap the scroll bar to scroll through the available options. Press the TUNE/MENU knob or touch Radio Settings to display the radio settings menu. Touch this feature to make changes for radio information displayed, preset pages, and Auto Volume.

The Radio Settings are:

Auto Volume : Select OFF, Low, Medium, or High sensitivity to automatically adjust the volume to minimise the effects of unwanted background noise that can result from changing road surfaces, driving speeds, or open windows. This feature works best at lower volume settings where background noise is typically louder than the sound system volume.

Gracenote Options: Touch to enable/disable Normalisation used to improve voice recognition and media groupings. See *CD Player on page 7-25*, *USB on page 7-27*, *Auxiliary Devices on page 7-33*, and *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-34*.

Startup Volume: Touch to set the maximum volume level for startup that will be used even if a higher volume had been set when the radio was turned off.

Number of Favourite Pages : Touch to select the number of FAV pages to be displayed.

Software Version Information: Touch to display information about the system and update software if available.

Phone Settings

See *Bluetooth on page 7-61* in the “Phone” section for more information on phone settings.

Navigation Settings

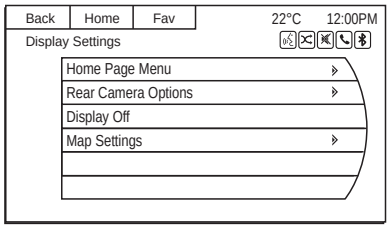
Touch the Config button on the Home Page to enter the setup menu. Turn the TUNE/MENU knob or touch-tap the scroll bar until the Navigation Settings option displays. Select this feature to make changes to Voice Prompt, Guidance Alert, Bread Crumbs, and Delete Saved Destinations.

Vehicle Settings

See “Vehicle Personalisation” in the owner manual.

Display Settings

Touch the Config button on the Home Page or the CONFIG button on the faceplate, then select Display Settings from the list.



The following options may display:

Home Page Menu: Touch to customise the first page of the Home Page.

Rear Camera Options: Touch to enter the submenu to change the display of symbols on or off.

Display Off: Touch to turn off the display. The display will return when any radio buttons are pressed or the screen is touched (if equipped).

Map Settings: Touch to enter the submenu to change Automatic Zoom, enable Speed Limit display on map, and change Map Display settings.

Map Display: Touch to change the screen background.

- The Automatic setting adjusts the screen background automatically depending on the exterior lighting conditions.
- The Day setting brightens the map background.
- The Night setting darkens the map background.

To change the overall brightness setting for the display, use the vehicle interior lighting instrument panel illumination control.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

The position of the vehicle is determined by using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, and map data.

At times, other interference such as the satellite condition, road configuration, condition of the vehicle, and/or other circumstances

can affect the navigation system's ability to determine the accurate position of the vehicle.

The GPS shows the current position of the vehicle using signals sent by the GPS Satellites. When the vehicle is not receiving signals from the satellites, a symbol appears on the map screen. See *Navigation Symbols on page 7-38*.

This system might not be available or interference can occur if any of the following are true:

- Signals are obstructed by tall buildings, trees, large trucks, or a tunnel.
- Satellites are being repaired or improved.

If the GPS is not functioning properly, see *Problems with Route Guidance on page 7-54* and *If the System Needs Service on page 7-54*.

Vehicle Positioning

At times, the position of the vehicle on the map could be inaccurate due to one or more of the following reasons:

- The road system has changed.
- The vehicle is driving on slippery road surfaces such as sand, gravel, or snow.
- The vehicle is travelling on winding roads or long straight roads.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall building or a large vehicle.
- The surface streets run parallel to a freeway.
- The vehicle has been transferred by a vehicle carrier or a ferry.
- The current position calibration is set incorrectly.
- The vehicle is travelling at high speed.
- The vehicle changes directions more than once, or the vehicle is turning on a turn table in a parking lot.
- The vehicle is entering and/or exiting a parking lot, garage, or a lot with a roof.
- The GPS signal is not received.
- A roof carrier is installed on the vehicle.
- Tyre chains have been installed.
- The tyres are replaced or worn.
- The tyre pressure for the tyres is incorrect.
- This is the first navigation use after the map data is updated.
- The 12-volt battery is disconnected for several days.
- The vehicle is driving in heavy traffic where driving is at low speeds, and the vehicle is stopped and started repeatedly.

Problems with Route Guidance

Inappropriate route guidance can occur under one or more of the following conditions:

- The turn was not made on the road indicated.
- Route guidance might not be available when using automatic rerouting for the next right or left turn.
- The route might not be changed when using automatic rerouting.
- There is no route guidance when turning at an intersection.
- Plural names of places might be announced occasionally.
- It could take a long time to operate automatic rerouting during high-speed driving.
- Automatic rerouting might display a route returning to the set waypoint if heading for a destination without passing through a set waypoint.
- The route prohibits the entry of a vehicle due to a regulation by time or season or any other regulation which may be given.
- Some routes might not be searched.
- The route to the destination might not be shown if there are new roads, if roads have recently changed, or if certain roads are not listed in the map data. See *Maps on page 7-38*.

To recalibrate the vehicle's position on the map, park with the vehicle running for two to five minutes, until the vehicle position updates. Make sure the vehicle is parked in a location that is safe and has a clear view of the sky and away from large obstruction.

If the System Needs Service

If the navigation system needs service and the steps listed here have been followed but there are still problems, see your dealer for assistance.

Map Data Updates

The map data in the vehicle is the most up-to-date information available when the vehicle was produced. The map data is updated periodically, provided that the map information has changed.

For questions about the operation of the navigation system or the update process, contact your dealer.

Database Coverage Explanations

Coverage areas vary with respect to the level of map detail available for any given area. Some areas feature greater levels of detail than others.

If this happens, it does not mean there is a problem with the system. As the map data is updated, more detail can become available for areas that previously had limited detail. See *Map Data Updates on page 7-54*.

Voice Recognition

Voice recognition allows for hands-free operation of the infotainment system features.

Voice recognition can be used when the radio is on or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See “Retained Accessory Power (RAP)” in the owner manual. The system maintains a minimum volume level.

Using Voice Recognition

1. Press / on the steering wheel. The audio system mutes. A voice prompt states, “Please say a command.” Wait until the tone is heard before speaking.

   If there is no tone, make sure that the volume is turned up.

   While voice recognition is active, the system displays a symbol in the top right of the screen.

2. Clearly speak one of the commands listed later in this section.

Press / twice on the steering wheel to skip the voice prompt messages.

Cancelling Voice Recognition

1. Press and release / on the steering wheel control to cancel a command, if the system response does not match the voice command, or say “Goodbye” or “Cancel.”
2. The system replies, “Goodbye.”

Helpful Hints for Speaking Commands

- When multiple commands are available, choose the command that works best for you.
- Words in parentheses are optional. For example, for the command “Tune FM

(frequency)," saying "Tune FM 87.7" or "Tune FM" are both valid commands.

- When the command is recognised, the system will either perform the function or ask to confirm the choice.
- When the system does not recognise the command, the system says "pardon."
- If experiencing difficulty with the system recognising a command, confirm that the command is correct. Try saying the command clearly or wait for a brief moment after the tone.
- Background noise such as a climate control fan positioned on high, open windows, and very loud outside noises, even if the windows are closed, can cause voice commands to be misunderstood.
- To increase or decrease the voice volume during a voice recognition session, turn the volume knob of the radio, or press the volume steering wheel control. If the volume is adjusted during a voice recognition session, a Volume bar appears on the screen showing the voice volume level as it is being adjusted. This also changes the volume of the guidance prompts.
- When using navigation commands, take the time to become familiar with the address. Long delays when giving the address can result in the system not recognising the address or routing to different location than intended.
- When providing the house number portion of the address, the system recognises both digit format and numerical text. An example would be to say, "3-0-0-0-1" or "Thirty Thousand One."

Voice Recognition Help

To enter the help playback session, clearly speak one of the help commands.

Help: The system plays back more specific help commands such as Radio Settings for the user to choose from.

Radio: Use this command to learn about how to select a band (AM or FM), and how to change radio stations by speaking frequency numbers.

Phone: Use this command to learn about how to dial, pair a device, or delete a device.

My Media: Use this command to learn how to play specific tracks, artists, albums, devices connected to the USB port, or to change sources.

Settings: Use this command to learn about how to turn Verbose on or off.

Voice Recognition Commands

The following list shows the voice commands available for the infotainment system with a brief description of each. The commands are listed with the optional words in parentheses. To use the voice commands, see the previous instructions.

Radio Commands

Tune AM, Tune FM, Tune Pandora, or Tune Stitcher: Instructs the system to go to the specific band and the last station.

Tune AM (frequency) or Tune FM (frequency): Instructs the system to go to the specific channel.

Thumbs Up: Instructs the system to give the current song or station a thumbs up in Pandora or Stitcher.

Thumbs Down: Instructs the system to give the current song or station a thumbs down in Pandora or Stitcher.

Phone Commands

Dial or Call (phone number or contact): Instructs the system to start a phone call. For example, say “Dial 1248 4567.” To call a phone book contact, say “Dial” or “Call,” say the name and location, and then say “Dial.” For example, say “Call John at Home” or “Call John at Work.” If a number is not recognised, the first number in the list will be called.

Pair or Connect: Instructs the system to begin pairing a device.

Digit Dial: Instructs the system to dial a phone number one digit at a time. After saying the digits, say “Dial.”

Redial or Redial Last Number: Instructs the system to dial the last phone number called.

Select Device or Change Phone: Instructs the system to switch to a different paired device. The device must be selected from the screen or using the TUNE/MENU knob.

Delete Device: Instructs the system to delete a paired device.

Read Text Messages or Read SMS Messages: Instructs the system to begin reading text messages from paired device.

Not all devices support text messages. Applicable where equipped.

My Media Commands

CD, AUX, USB, or Bluetooth Audio: Instructs the system to change the source.

Play CD Track: Instructs the system to play a CD. For example, say “Play CD Track.”

The following commands only apply to USB, iPod, iPhone sources. They are supported after the device has been indexed.

Play Artist (artist name): Instructs the system to play songs by a specific artist. For example, say “Play Artist <artist name>.”

Play Album (album title): Instructs the system to play a specific album.

Play Song (song title): Instructs the system to play a specific song.

Play Genre (genre name): Instructs the system to play songs of a particular genre.

Search Artist (artist name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs by a specific artist. For example, say "Search Artist <artist name>."

Search Composer (composer name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs by a specific composer. For example, say "Search Composer <composer name>."

Search Album (album name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs by a specific album. For example, say "Search Album <album name>."

Search Genre (genre name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs for a specific genre. For example, say "Search Genre <genre name>."

Search Folder (folder name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs in a specific folder. For example, say "Search folder <folder name>."

Search Play list (play list name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs in a specific play list. For example, say "Search play list <play list name>."

Search Audio Book (audio book name): Instructs the system to show a list of all tracks in a specific audio book. For example, say "Search audio book <audio book name>."

Search Play List (playlist name): Instructs the system to show a list of all songs in a specific playlist. For example, say "Search play list <playlist name>."

Search Podcast (podcast name): Instructs the system to show a list of all tracks in a specific podcast. For example, say "Search podcast <podcast name>."

More Like This: Instructs the system to create a playlist of tracks similar to the current track playing.

Settings Commands

Verbose (set) on (mode), Verbose (set) off (mode): Instructs the system to turn voice prompts on or off. When off, this feature turns off voice prompts.

List Devices: Instructs the system to give a list of devices to use.

Other Commands

Goodbye: Instructs the system to end a phone call or voice recognition.

Cancel: Instructs the system to cancel an action.

Go Back, Back, Previous: Instructs the system to go back to a prior menu.

Main Menu: Instructs the system to go to the main menu.

Yes, Yep, Yup, Ya, Sure, Right, Correct, OK, Positive, You Got it, Probably, You Bet: These can be used to say “Yes.”

No, Nope, Na, No way, Wrong, Incorrect, Negative, Not really, No I said, No I Did Not, No I Do Not: These can be used to say “No.”

Next Page, Page Down: Instructs the system to scroll forward one page in a list.

Previous Page, Page Up: Instructs the system to scroll back one page in a list.

Navigation Commands (If Equipped)

To activate the navigation voice recognition:

1. Press ✆ / ⏦ on the steering wheel. The audio system mutes. A voice prompt says, “Please say a command.” Wait until the tone is heard before speaking.

   If there is no tone, make sure the volume is turned up.

   While voice recognition is active, the system displays a symbol in the top right of the screen.
2. Clearly speak the command “Navigation.”
3. Clearly speak one of the commands in this section.

The following commands only apply once the Navigation command is given.

Address or Destination: Allows an address to be stated as a one-shot method. The system will recognise the address if stated all at once or say a city centre.

Directed Address: Allows an address to be stated one step at a time. The format will be City/Suburb, Street, then House Number.

Intersection: Allows an Intersection to be stated as the destination. The format will be City/Suburb, Street, then Intersection.

Contact: When a phone is paired to the system, which contains Address Information stored for contacts, the address associated with that contact can become a route. If the system cannot resolve the address, an error displays.

Home: Instructs the system to start guidance to the address saved as My Home.

Points of Interest or POI: Allows a Point of Interest to be stated as a destination. Become familiar with

the POI categories and sub-categories in the system by touching Destination from the Home Page or DEST on the faceplate, then selecting Point of Interest. POI commands for Along Route and Around Destination will be available if route guidance is active.

Add Waypoint: Allows addition of individual waypoints or the destination. The system will ask for the choice of entry method to continue. An example is to say, “POI Along Route” or “Intersection.”

Delete Waypoint: When guidance is active, this command allows the deletion of individual waypoints or the destination. If guidance is not active, the system will indicate the destination list is empty.

Where Am I?, My Location, or Current Position: Instructs the system to give the current position of the vehicle.

Help: The system plays back more specific help commands associated with Navigation or a Navigation sub-feature.

Cancel Guidance or Cancel Route: Instructs the system to cancel guidance.

Help Commands

- Help
- Hands-Free Calling (if available)

After each list of help commands, the following are available:

- Go Back
- Repeat
- Cancel
- Help
- Goodbye

Hands-Free Calling

- Call
- Store
- Commands
  - Call
  - Store
  - My Number
  - Minutes
  - Store Last Number
  - Digit Dial
  - Redial
  - Dial
  - Number Recall
  - Directory
  - Digit Store

Voice Pass-Thru

Voice pass-thru allows access to the voice recognition commands on the mobile phone, i.e. Siri or Voice Command. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide to see if the mobile phone supports this feature.

To activate phone voice recognition system, press and hold / on the steering wheel for approximately two sec.

Bluetooth Phone/ Devices

Bluetooth

Overview

For vehicles equipped with Bluetooth capability, the system can interact with many cell phones and devices, allowing:

- Placing and receiving hands-free calls.
- Sharing of the cell phone's address book or contact list with the vehicle. The phone book will only display when that phone is connected.
- Placing outgoing calls by voice recognition.

The system can be used while in ON/RUN, ACC/ACCESSORY, or Retained Accessory Power (RAP). The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 9.1 m. The radio can connect to most Bluetooth-enabled phones. Available features and functions may be dependent on the device.

On a current phone call screen, an image of the contact from your phone's contact list can be displayed. Not all phones are compatible with this feature.

Bluetooth Controls

Use the buttons on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the Bluetooth system.

Steering Wheel Controls

/ (Push to Talk): Press to answer incoming calls and start voice recognition.

/ (Mute/End Call): Press to end a call, decline an incoming call, or cancel voice recognition.

+ − (Volume): Press + or − to increase or decrease the volume.

Infotainment System Controls

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Overview on page 7-1*.

or / (Phone/Mute): Press to enter the Phone main menu. Press and hold to mute or unmute.

Voice Recognition

The voice recognition system uses commands to control the system and dial phone numbers.

When using voice recognition:

- The system may not recognise voice commands if there is too much background noise.
- A tone sounds to indicate that the system is ready for a voice command. Wait for the tone and then speak.
- Speak clearly in a calm and natural voice.

See *Voice Recognition on page 7-55*.

Audio System

Sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Use the VOL/⏻ knob during a call to change the volume level. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. The system maintains a minimum volume level.

See *Voice Recognition on page 7-55*.

Bluetooth Audio

See *Bluetooth Audio on page 7-34*.

Pairing with Infotainment Controls

A Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone must be paired and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See your mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the mobile phone.

Pairing Information

- A Bluetooth-enabled phone and an audio playback device can be paired to the system at the same time.
- Up to five devices can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the mobile phone changes or the mobile phone is deleted from the system.
- Only one paired mobile phone can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.
- If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the radio will connect to the first phone in the list or to the phone that was previously connected.

Pairing a Phone/Device

1. Press the CONFIG button or 📞 or 📞 / ⊠.
2. Select Phone Settings.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Pair Device (Phone). The radio displays “Please start Bluetooth search on your phone. Confirm or enter number.” If the device supports a four or six-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN), it will display. The PIN is used in Step 5.
5. Start the pairing process on the mobile phone to be paired to the vehicle. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide.
6. Locate and select the device named after the vehicle make and model in the list on the mobile phone. Follow the instructions on the mobile phone to enter the PIN provided in Step 3, or to confirm the four or six-digit code matches. The

system recognises the new connected phone after the pairing process is complete.

7. If the phone prompts to accept connection or allow phone book download, select always accept and allow. The phone book may not be available if not accepted. Some phones will put connection request or phone book request in a pull down task bar at the top of the screen. Drag down the task bar and look for connection/phone book request and accept.
8. Repeat to pair additional phones.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones/Devices

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Device List.

Deleting a Paired Phone/Device

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Device List.
5. Select the phone to delete and follow the screen prompts.

Connecting to a Different Phone

To connect to a different phone, the new phone must be in the vehicle and available to be connected to the Bluetooth system before the process is started.

1. Press the CONFIG button.
2. Select Phone Settings.
3. Select Bluetooth.
4. Select Device List.
5. Select the new phone to connect to and follow the screen prompts.

Pairing with Voice Recognition

A Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone must be paired and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the mobile phone.

Pairing a Phone

1. Press ✆ / 🎤. The system responds “Please Say a Command,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Pair.” The system responds with “Please search for Bluetooth devices on your phone, select your vehicle, confirm, or enter the pin number provided on the screen.”
3. Start the pairing process on the phone to be paired.
4. Locate and select the device named after the vehicle make and model in the list on the mobile phone. Follow the instructions on the mobile phone

to enter the PIN or to confirm the four or six-digit code matches. The system responds “successfully paired.”

5. Repeat Steps 1–4 to pair additional phones.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

The system can list all cell phones paired to it. If a paired mobile phone is also connected to the vehicle, the system responds to confirm that phone name is connected.

1. Press ✆ / . The system responds “Please Say a Command,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “List Device.”

Deleting a Paired Phone

1. Press ✆ / . The system responds “Please Say a Command,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Delete Device.”
3. The system responds with: “To delete a device, please select its name from the list.” Select the device to delete on the display and it will be removed.

To cancel this command, press / on the steering wheel control or press the BACK ⇦ button on the radio faceplate.

Connecting to a Different Phone or Device

To connect to a different mobile phone, the system looks for the next available mobile phone. Depending on the mobile phone to be connected, this command may need to be repeated.

1. Press ✆ / . The system responds “Please Say a Command,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Change Phone.”
   - To select a device, touch the name on the display.
   - If another mobile phone is not found, the original phone remains connected.

Making a Call Using Phone Book and Infotainment Controls

For mobile phones that support the phone book feature, the Bluetooth system can use the contacts stored on the mobile phone to make calls. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide or contact the wireless provider to find out if this feature is supported.

When a mobile phone supports the phone book feature, the Phone Book and Call Lists menus are automatically available.

The Phone Book menu allows access to the phone book stored in the mobile phone to make a call.

The Call Lists menu allows access to the phone numbers from the Incoming Calls, Outgoing Calls, and Missed Calls menus on the mobile phone to make a call.

The radio will display the first 1,000 contacts and the phone numbers for each contact including Home, Work, Mobile, and Other.

To make a call using the Phone Book menu:

1. Press or / once on the radio or the Phone screen button.
2. Select Phone Book.
3. Select the letter group of the phone book entry to scroll through the list of names/ numbers.
4. Select the name.
5. Select the number to call.

To make a call using the Call Lists menu:

1. Press or / once on the radio or the Phone screen button.
2. Select Call Lists.
3. Select the Incoming Calls, Outgoing Calls, or Missed Calls list.
4. Select the name or number to call.

Making a Call Using the Infotainment Controls

To make a call:

1. Press or / once on the radio or the Phone screen button.
2. Touch Enter Number.
3. Enter the phone number.
4. Select OK to start dialling the number.

To make a call using voice recognition, see “Making a Call” under *Bluetooth on page 7-61*.

Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

Using the Infotainment Controls

Turn the TUNE/MENU knob to “Answer” or “Decline” and press the TUNE/MENU knob or touch Accept or Decline on the screen.

Using Steering Wheel Controls

Press / to answer or / to decline the call.

Call Waiting Using the Infotainment Controls

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

Switching Between Calls (Call Waiting Calls Only)

To switch between calls turn and press the TUNE/MENU knob and select Switch Call or select Switch Call on the screen.

Call Waiting Using Steering Wheel Controls

Call waiting must be supported on the mobile phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier.

- Press ✆ / ✆ to answer an incoming call when another call is active. The original call is placed on hold.
- Press ✆ / ✆ again to return to the original call.
- To decline answering the incoming call, touch Decline on the screen or take no action.
- Press ✆ / ✆ to disconnect the current call and switch to the call on hold.

Conference Calling Using the Infotainment Controls

Conference calling and three-way calling must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work. This feature is only supported when the vehicle is not moving.

To start a conference while in a current call:

1. Turn and press the TUNE/MENU knob and select Enter Number.
2. Enter the phone number and select OK.
3. After the call has been placed, turn the TUNE/MENU knob and choose Merge Calls.
4. To add more callers to the conference call, repeat Steps 1 −3. The number of callers that can be added is limited by your wireless service carrier.

Ending a Call

Using the Infotainment Controls

Turn and press the TUNE/MENU knob and select Hang Up or touch Hang Up on the screen.

Using Steering Wheel Controls

Press ✆ / ✆.

Muting a Call

During a call, all sounds from inside the vehicle can be muted so that the person on the other end of the call cannot hear them.

Using the Infotainment Controls

Turn and press the TUNE/MENU knob and select Mute Call. Press again to cancel mute.

Transferring a Call

Audio can be transferred between the Bluetooth system and the mobile phone.

The mobile phone must be paired and connected with the Bluetooth system before a call can be transferred.

To Transfer Audio from the Bluetooth System to a Cell Phone

During a call with the audio in the vehicle, touch the Transfer Call button on the screen or press and hold the ✆ / ✆ button on the steering wheel.

To Transfer Audio to the Bluetooth System from a Cell Phone

Use the audio transfer feature on the mobile phone. See your mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for more information. Touch the Transfer Call button on the screen or press and hold the ✆ / ⏯ button on the steering wheel.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu-driven phone system.

Using the Infotainment Controls

1. Turn and press the TUNE/MENU knob and select Enter Number.
2. Enter the phone number, or select Enter Number on the screen and select digits, then touch OK.

Clearing the System

Unless information is deleted out of the vehicle Bluetooth system, it will be retained. This includes phone pairing information. For directions on how to delete this information, see “Deleting a Paired Phone/ Device.”

Text Messaging

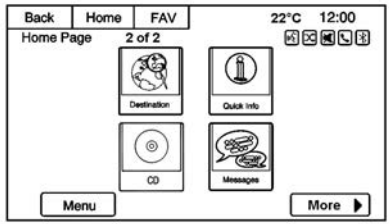
The infotainment system can display text messages, play back a message over the audio system, and send a predefined message reply.

Not all phones support all functions and work with Bluetooth.

The infotainment system only supports the receipt of SMS text messages. A request may need to be accepted on the phone or some phone settings may need to be changed to allow text messaging to function. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide.

The text messaging feature can also be initiated via voice recognition.

Using Text Messaging

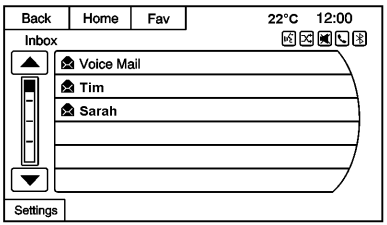


1. Touch the Messages button on the Home Page or select Text Messages from the Phone main screen.

Note: The Messages button on the home page and Phone main screen option will only be visible if a paired phone supporting SMS text messages with correct settings is connected.

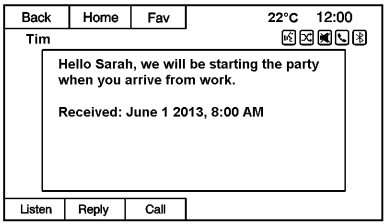
iPhone: Ensure Show Notifications is ON in the paired MyLink settings on the phone.

Android: Accept and activate Message Access Profile (MAP) if requested.



2. Select a message for viewing. Viewing messages is only available while the vehicle is not in motion.

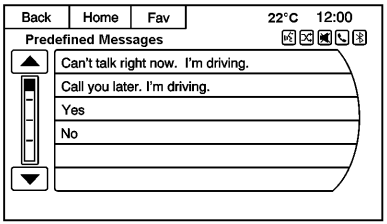
   Depending on the phone connected, either existing messages or messages as they are received are displayed.



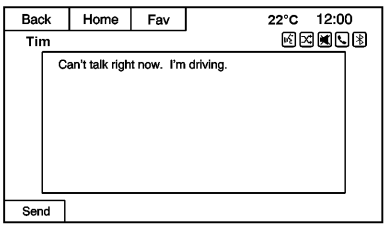
3. View the message. The message view screen is not available while the vehicle is in motion.

- Touch Listen to hear the message through the audio system.
- Touch Call to dial the contact or number associated with the text message. Not all phones allow calling the sender of the message and will result in not being able to select Call.
- Touch Reply to reply with a predefined message, to a text message that was received as an incoming message. Not all phones support the sending of messages.

Replying to Text Messages



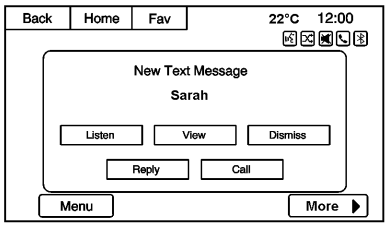
1. Select the desired message from the display of predefined messages to send as the reply.



2. Touch Send to send the message.

   Alternatively, touch Back to cancel and return to the previous screen.

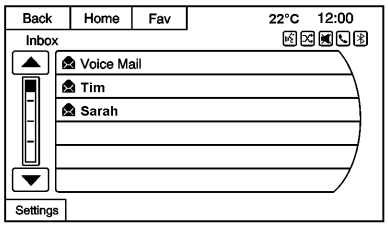
Incoming Text Messages



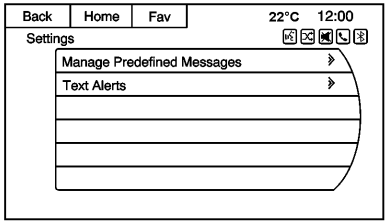
A pop-up screen is displayed when there is an incoming text message. The pop-up will remain on the screen until Dismiss is selected.

- Touch Listen to hear the message through the audio system.
- Touch View to view the message. The message view screen is not available while the vehicle is in motion.
- Touch Reply to reply to the text message using a predefined message.
- Touch Call to dial the contact or number associated with the text message.
- Touch Dismiss to close the pop-up incoming message screen.

Text Messaging Settings



In the Text Message Inbox, touch Settings to access the Text Message Settings menu.



- Touch Manage Predefined Messages to create a user defined message that can be used later to reply to a text message.

  Use the touch screen keyboard to enter the message.

  Touch Done to store.
- To delete a predefined message, select the message and touch Yes to confirm.

- Touch Text Alerts to choose the alert behaviour for incoming text messages:
  - Text alert with tone
  - Tone only
  - Off

Trademarks and Licence Agreements

“Made for iPod” and “Made for iPhone” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.

iPod and iPhone are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Gracenote

Gracenote®, Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either a registered trademark or a trademark of Gracenote, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Bluetooth

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Pandora

Pandora is a registered trademark of Pandora Media, Inc., used under license.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems
Automatic Climate Control System 8-1
Dual Automatic Climate Control System 8-4

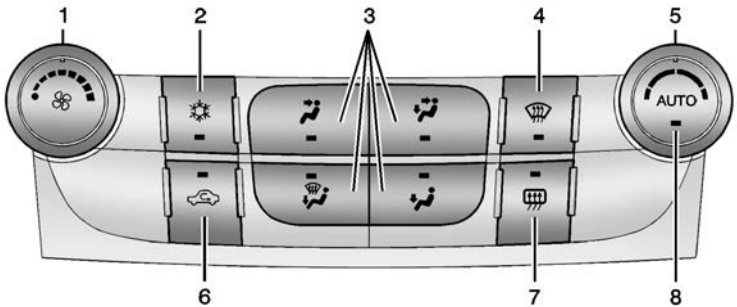
Air Vents
Air Vents 8-6

Maintenance
Passenger Compartment Air Filter 8-7

Climate Control Systems

Automatic Climate Control System

The heating, cooling, and ventilation for the vehicle can be controlled with this system.



1. Fan Control
2. Air Conditioning
3. Air Delivery Modes
4. Defrost
5. Temperature Control
6. Recirculation
7. Rear Window Demister
8. AUTO (Automatic Operation)

Automatic Operation

The system automatically controls the fan speed, air delivery, air conditioning, and recirculation in order to heat or cool the vehicle to the desired temperature.

When the indicator light is on, the system is in full automatic operation. If the air delivery mode or fan setting is manually adjusted, the auto indicator turns off and displays will show the selected settings.

To place the system in automatic mode:

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Press AUTO.
3. Set the temperature. Allow the system time to stabilise. Then adjust the temperature as needed for best comfort.

Manual Operation

Temperature Control: Turn the knob clockwise or anticlockwise to increase or decrease the driver or passenger temperature setting.

Fan Control: Turn the knob clockwise or anticlockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed.

Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

Air Delivery Modes: Press , , , or to change the direction of the airflow. An indicator light comes on in the selected mode button.

Changing the mode cancels the automatic operation and the system goes into manual mode. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

(Vent): Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level): Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets.

(Floor): Air is directed to the floor outlets.

(Demist): Air is directed to the windscreen and floor outlets to clear the windows of fog or moisture.

(Defrost): Press to clear the windscreen of fog or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windscreen and side window outlets.

For best results, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen before defrosting.

(Air Conditioning): Press to turn the air conditioning on or off. If the fan is turned off or the outside temperature falls below freezing, the air conditioner will not run and the indicator light turns off.

Press AUTO to return to automatic operation and the air conditioner runs as needed. When the indicator light is on, the air conditioner runs automatically to cool the air inside the vehicle or to dry the air needed to demist the windscreen faster.

(Recirculation): Press to turn on recirculation. An indicator light comes on. Air is recirculated to quickly cool the inside of the vehicle or prevent outside air and odours from entering.

Rear Window Demister

(Rear Window Demister): Press to turn the rear window demister on or off.

The rear window demister turns off automatically after about 10 minutes. If turned on again, it runs for about five minutes before turning off. At higher speeds, the rear window demister may stay on continuously.

The heated outside rear view mirrors turn on with the rear window demister and help to clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirror. See *Heated Mirrors on page 2-13*.

⚠ Caution

Using a razor blade or sharp object on the inside rear window can damage the antenna or demister. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not stick anything to the rear window.

Sensors

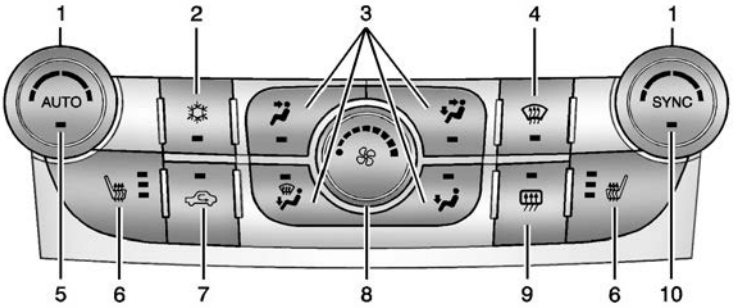
The solar sensor on top of the instrument panel near the windscreen monitors the solar heat.

The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air delivery mode for best comfort.

If the sensor is covered, the automatic climate control system may not work properly.

Dual Automatic Climate Control System

The heating, cooling, and ventilation for the vehicle can be controlled with this system.



1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
2. Air Conditioning
3. Air Delivery Modes
4. Defrost
5. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
6. Heated Seats
7. Recirculation
8. Fan Control
9. Rear Window Demister
10. SYNC

Automatic Operation

The system automatically controls the fan speed, air delivery, air conditioning, and recirculation in order to heat or cool the vehicle to the desired temperature.

When the indicator light is on, the system is in full automatic operation. If the air delivery mode or fan setting is manually adjusted, the auto indicator turns off and displays will show the selected settings.

To place the system in automatic mode:

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Press AUTO.
3. Set the temperature. Allow the system time to stabilise. Then adjust the temperature as needed for best comfort.

Manual Operation

Driver and Passenger Temperature Control: The temperature can be adjusted separately for the driver and passenger.

Turn the knob clockwise or anticlockwise to increase or decrease the driver or passenger temperature setting.

SYNC: Press to link all climate zone settings to the driver settings. The SYNC indicator light will turn on. When the passenger settings are adjusted, the SYNC indicator light turns off.

Fan Control: Turn the knob clockwise or anticlockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed.

Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

Air Delivery Modes: Press , , , or to change the direction of the airflow. An indicator light comes on in the selected mode button.

Changing the mode cancels the automatic operation and the system goes into manual mode. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

(Vent): Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level): Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets.

(Floor): Air is directed to the floor outlets.

(Demist): Air is directed to the windscreen and floor outlets to clear the windows of fog or moisture.

(Defrost): Press to clear the windscreen of fog or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windscreen and side window outlets.

For best results, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen before defrosting.

(Air Conditioning): Press to turn the air conditioning on or off. If the fan is turned off or the outside temperature falls below freezing, the air conditioner will not run and the indicator light turns off.

Press AUTO to return to automatic operation and the air conditioner runs as needed. When the indicator light is on, the air conditioner runs automatically to cool the air inside the vehicle or to dry the air needed to demist the windscreen faster.

(Recirculation): Press to turn on recirculation. An indicator light comes on. Air is recirculated to quickly cool the inside of the vehicle or prevent outside air and odours from entering.

Auto Demist: The climate control system has a sensor to automatically detect high humidity inside the vehicle. When high humidity is detected, the climate control system may adjust to outside air supply and turn on the air conditioner. The fan speed may slightly increase to help prevent fogging. If the climate control system does not detect possible window fogging, it returns to normal operation. To turn Auto Demist off or on, see “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalisation on page 5-27*

or (Heated Seats): Press to turn the heated seats on or off. See *Heated Front Seats on page 3-6*.

Rear Window Demister

(Rear Window Demister): Press to turn the rear window demister on or off.

The rear window demister turns off automatically after about 10 minutes. If turned on again, it runs for about five minutes before turning off. At higher speeds, the rear window demister may stay on continuously.

The heated outside rear view mirrors turn on with the rear window demister and help to clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirror. See *Heated Mirrors on page 2-13*.

⚠ Caution

Using a razor blade or sharp object on the inside rear window can damage the antenna or demister. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not stick anything to the rear window.

Sensors

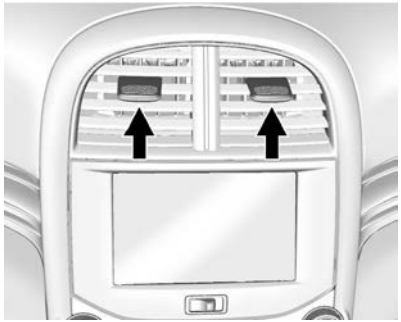
The solar sensor on top of the instrument panel near the windscreen monitors the solar heat.

The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air delivery mode for best comfort.

If the sensor is covered, the automatic climate control system may not work properly.

Air Vents

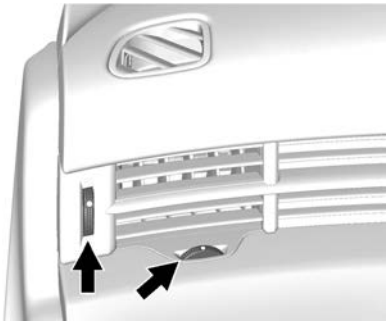
Centre Air Vents



Use the slider knobs on the air vents to change the direction of the airflow.

Move the slider knobs sideways to open or close off the airflow.

Side Air Vents



Use the thumbwheels to change the direction of the airflow.

Move the vertical thumbwheels up or down to open or close off the airflow.

Rear Air Vents

Air vents are located at the rear of the centre console.

Operation Tips

- Keep all outlets open whenever possible for best system performance.
- Keep the paths under all seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside the vehicle more effectively.
- Do not attach any devices to the air vent louvres. This restricts airflow and may cause damage to the air vents.

Maintenance

Passenger Compartment Air Filter

The filter removes dust, pollen, and other airborne irritants from outside air that is pulled into the vehicle.

The filter should be replaced as part of routine scheduled maintenance. See the Service/Warranty booklet.

✍ NOTES

Driving and Operating

Driving Information
Control of a Vehicle 9-2
Braking 9-2
Steering 9-2

Starting and Operating
New vehicle running-in 9-3
Ignition Positions 9-3
Starting the Engine 9-5
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 9-5
Shifting Into Park 9-6
Shifting out of Park 9-6
Parking On Flammable Surfaces 9-8

Engine Exhaust
Engine Exhaust 9-8
Diesel Particulate Filter 9-8
Running the Vehicle While Parked 9-10

Automatic Transmission
Automatic Transmission 9-10
Manual Mode 9-11

Brakes
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 9-12
Electric Parking Brake 9-13
Brake Assist 9-15
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 9-15

Ride Control Systems
Traction Control System (TCS) 9-16
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 9-18

Cruise Control
Cruise Control 9-20

Driver Assistance Systems
Ultrasonic Parking Assist 9-22
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 9-24

Fuel
Fuel 9-26
Fuel Additives 9-26
Fuel for Petrol Engines 9-26
Fuel for Diesel Engines 9-27
Filling the Tank 9-28
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 9-29

Towing
Trailer Towing 9-30

Conversions and Add-Ons
Add-On Electrical Equipment 9-34

Driving Information

Control of a Vehicle

Braking, steering, and accelerating are important factors in helping to control a vehicle while driving.

Braking

Helpful braking tips to keep in mind include:

- Keep enough distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid needless heavy braking.
- Keep pace with traffic.

If the engine ever stops while the vehicle is being driven, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. Doing so could make the pedal harder to push down. If the engine stops, there will be some power brake assist but it will be used when the brake is applied. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Steering

Electric Power Steering

If the vehicle has electric power steering, it does not have power steering fluid. Regular maintenance is not required.

If power steering assist is lost due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered, but may require increased effort. See your dealer if there is a problem.

If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel, and is held in that position for an extended period of time, power steering assist may be reduced.

If the steering assist is used for an extended period of time, power assist may be reduced.

Normal use of the power steering assist should return when the system cools down.

See specific vehicle steering messages under *Vehicle Messages on page 5-21*.

Hydraulic Power Steering

If the vehicle has the hydraulic power steering, it may require maintenance. See *Power Steering Fluid (Diesel Engine Only) on page 10-17*.

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or a system malfunctions, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort.

⚠ Caution

If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel, and is held in that position for more than 15 seconds, damage may occur to the power steering system and there may be loss of power steering assist.

Starting and Operating

New vehicle running-in

⚠ Caution

The vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:

- Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 800 km. Do not make full-throttle starts. Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.
- Avoid making hard stops for the first 300 km or so. During this time the new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.

Following break-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

Ignition Positions

The vehicle has an electronic keyless ignition with pushbutton start.

Pressing the button cycles it through three modes, ACC/ACCESSORY, ON/RUN/START, and Stopping the Engine/OFF.

The transmitter must be in the vehicle for the system to operate. If the pushbutton start is not working, the vehicle may be near a strong radio antenna signal causing interference to the keyless access system. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation on page 2-3* for more information.

To shift out of P (Park), the vehicle must be in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN and the brake pedal must be applied.

Stopping the Engine/OFF (No Indicator Lights): When the vehicle is stopped, press the engine START/STOP button once to turn the engine off.

If the vehicle is in P (Park), the ignition will turn off, and Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 9-5* for more information.

If the vehicle is not in P (Park), the ignition will return to ACC/ ACCESSORY and display the

message SHIFT TO PARK in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Transmission Messages on page 5-26* for more information. When the vehicle is shifted into P (Park), the ignition system will switch to OFF.

The vehicle has an electric steering column lock. The lock is activated when the ignition is switched to off and either front door is opened. A sound may be heard as the lock actuates or releases. The steering column lock may not release with the wheels turned off centre. If this happens, the vehicle may not start, and a DIC message will be displayed. Turn the steering wheel to the left or right while attempting to start the vehicle. See *Starting the Vehicle Messages on page 5-26* for more information. If this does not work, the vehicle needs service.

Do not turn the engine off when the vehicle is moving. This will cause a loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags.

If the vehicle must be shut off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to N (Neutral), firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop, shift to P (Park), and turn the ignition off. The shift lever must be in P (Park) to turn the ignition off.
4. Set the parking brake. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-13*.

⚠ Warning

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags. While driving, only shut the vehicle off in an emergency.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over, and must be shut off while driving, press and hold the engine START/STOP button for longer than two seconds, or press twice in five seconds.

ACC/ACCESSORY (Amber Indicator Light): This mode allows you to use some electrical accessories when the engine is off.

With the ignition off, pressing the button one time without the brake pedal applied will place the ignition system in ACC/ACCESSORY.

The ignition will switch from ACC/ ACCESSORY to OFF after five minutes to prevent battery rundown.

ON/RUN/START (Green Indicator Light): This mode is for driving and starting. With the ignition off, and the brake pedal applied, pressing the button once will place the ignition system in ON/RUN/START. Once engine cranking begins, release the button. Engine cranking will continue until the engine starts. See *Starting the Engine on page 9-5* for more information. The ignition will then remain in ON/RUN.

Service Only Mode

This power mode is available for service and diagnostics, and to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emission inspection purposes. With the vehicle off, and the brake pedal not applied, pressing and holding the button for more than five seconds will place the vehicle in Service Only Mode. The instruments and audio systems will operate as they do in ON/RUN, but the vehicle will not be able to be driven. The engine will not start in Service Only Mode. Push the button again to turn the vehicle off.

Starting the Engine

⚠ Caution

Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.

1. The transmitter must be in the vehicle.
2. Move the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). The engine will not start in any other position. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.
3. Press the brake pedal.
4. Press the engine START/STOP button. The green LED will illuminate and the engine will start. To switch the engine off, press the START/STOP button again. If the vehicle fails to start and the message NO REMOTE DETECTED and/or USE TRANSMITTER POCKET TO START is displayed, see *Key and Lock Messages on page 5-24*.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

These vehicle accessories can be used for up to 10 minutes after the engine is turned off:

- Audio System
- Power Windows

These features continue to work up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned to LOCK/OFF.

The power windows will work until any door is opened.

The radio continues to work until the driver door is opened.

All these features operate when the key is in ON/RUN or ACC/ ACCESSORY.

Shifting Into Park

1. Hold the brake pedal down and set the parking brake. See *Electric Parking Brake on page 9-13*.
2. Move the shift lever into P (Park) by holding in the button on the shift lever and pushing the shift lever all the way toward the front of the vehicle.
3. Turn the ignition to OFF by pressing the START/STOP button.

Leaving the Vehicle with the Engine Running

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the engine running. It could overheat and catch fire.

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when on level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-6*.

If the vehicle must be left with the engine running, be sure the vehicle is in P (Park) and the parking brake is set before leaving it. After moving the shift lever into P (Park), hold the regular brake pedal down. Then, see if the shift lever can be moved away from P (Park) without first pushing the button.

If it can, the shift lever was not fully locked in P (Park).

Torque Lock

Torque lock is when the weight of the vehicle puts too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. This happens when parking on a hill and shifting the transmission into P (Park) is not done properly, then it is difficult to shift out of P (Park). To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into P (Park). See “Shifting Into Park” listed previously.

Shifting out of Park

This vehicle is equipped with an electronic shift lock release system. The shift lock release is designed to prevent movement of the shift lever

out of P (Park), unless the ignition is in ON/RUN and the brake pedal is applied.

The shift lock release is always functional except in the case of an uncharged or low voltage (less than 9-volt) battery.

If the vehicle has an uncharged battery or a battery with low voltage, try charging or jump starting the battery. See *Jump Starting on page 10-53*.

To shift out of P (Park):

1. Apply the brake pedal.
2. Place the ignition in ON/RUN.
3. Press the shift lever button.
4. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

If still unable to shift out of P (Park):

1. Fully release the shift lever button.
2. Hold the brake pedal down and press the shift lever button again.
3. Move the shift lever to the desired position.

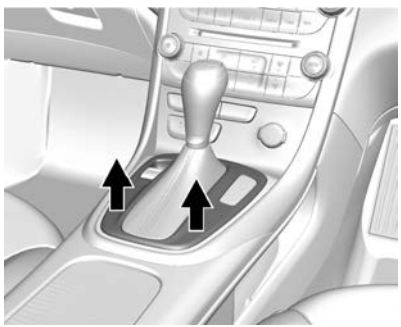
If you are still having a problem shifting, see your dealer.

Shift Lock Manual Release

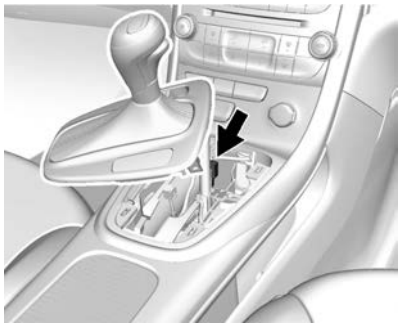
If jump starting the vehicle did not work, the shift lock manual release must be used.

To access the shift lock manual release:

1. Apply the parking brake.



2. Release the shift lever trim from the centre console at the rear, then fold upward and turn it to the left.



3. Insert a tool into the opening as far as it will go and move the shift lever out of P (Park). If P (Park) is selected again, the shift lever will be locked again. Have the cause of the problem fixed by your dealer.
4. Install the shift lever trim on the console.

Parking On Flammable Surfaces

⚠ Warning

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ Warning

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle exhaust system has been modified, damaged, or improperly repaired.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or aftermarket modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

Diesel Particulate Filter

The diesel particle filter system filters harmful soot particles out of the exhaust gases. The system includes a self-cleaning function that

runs automatically during driving without any notification. The filter is cleaned by periodically burning off the soot particles at high temperature. This process takes place automatically under set driving conditions and may take up to 25 minutes. Typically it needs between 7 and 12 minutes. Fuel consumption may be higher during this period. The emission of smells and smoke during this process is normal.

Under certain driving conditions, e.g. short distances, the system cannot clean itself automatically. If the cleaning of the filter is required and if previous driving conditions did not enable automatic cleaning, it will be indicated by the indicator light . A warning message appears in the DIC. See *Diesel Particulate Filter Light on page 5-15*. illuminates when diesel particle filter is full. Start cleaning process as soon as possible. flashes when diesel particle filter has reached the maximum filling level. Start cleaning process immediately to avoid damage to the engine.

Cleaning Process

To activate cleaning process, continue driving and keep engine speed above 2000 revolutions per minute. Shift down if necessary. Diesel particle filter cleaning is then started. If illuminates additionally or a warning message appears in the DIC, cleaning is not possible. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

⚠ Caution

If the cleaning process is interrupted, there is a risk of causing severe engine damage.

Cleaning takes place quickest at high engine speeds and loads. Do not switch off the engine until the cleaning process is complete. The light will go out.

⚠ Warning

During DPF self cleaning or during extended idling in P (Park), the exhaust system and exhaust gases are very hot. Things that burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. You or others could be burnt. Do not park, or idle for an extended period of time, near or over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn. Keep the exhaust area clear of material that could ignite or burn. See *Parking on Flammable Surfaces on page 9-8* for more information.

Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running.

If the vehicle is left with the engine running, follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-6* and *Engine Exhaust on page 9-8*.

Automatic Transmission

P (Park): This position locks the front wheels. It is the best position to use when you start the engine because the vehicle cannot move easily.

⚠ Warning

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when on level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park on page 9-6*.

Make sure the shift lever is fully in P (Park) before starting the engine. The vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. You must fully apply the brake pedal then press the shift lever button before you can shift from P (Park) while the ignition key is in ON/RUN. If you cannot shift out

of P (Park), ease pressure on the shift lever and push the shift lever all the way into P (Park) as you maintain brake application. Then move the shift lever into another gear. See *Shifting out of Park on page 9-6*.

R (Reverse): Use this gear to reverse.

⚠ Caution

Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.

N (Neutral): In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

⚠ Warning

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed.

⚠ Caution

Shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting the vehicle.

D (Drive): This position is for normal driving. It provides good fuel economy when pushing the accelerator pedal around a quarter of the way down. If more power is needed for passing, press the accelerator pedal over half, or all the way down.

M (Manual Mode): This position allows you to change gears similar to a manual transmission. If the vehicle has this feature, see *Manual Mode on page 9-11*.

Manual Mode

Driver Shift Control (DSC)

To use this feature:

1. Move the shift lever from D (Drive) rearward to M (Manual).

   While driving in manual mode, the transmission will remain in the driver-selected gear. When coming to a stop in the manual position, the vehicle will automatically shift into 1 (First) gear.

2. Press the + (plus) end of the button on the top of the shift lever to upshift, or push the − (minus) end of the button to downshift.

The Driver Information Centre (DIC) in the instrument cluster will change from the currently displayed message to the letter “M,” for Manual position, and a number indicating the requested gear.

While using the DSC feature the transmission will have firmer shifting and sportier performance. You can use this for sport driving or when climbing hills to stay in gear longer or to downshift for more power or engine braking.

The transmission will only allow you to shift into gears appropriate for the vehicle speed and engine revolutions per minute (rpm):

- The transmission will not allow shifting to the next higher gear if the vehicle speed or engine rpm is too low.
- The transmission will not allow shifting to the next lower gear if the vehicle speed or engine rpm is too high.

Second and Third Gear Start Feature

When accelerating the vehicle from a stop in snowy and icy conditions, you may want to shift into 2 (Second) gear, or 3 (Third) gear for vehicles with a diesel engine. A higher gear allows you to gain more traction on slippery surfaces.

With the DSC feature, the vehicle can be set to pull away in 2 (Second) or 3 (Third) gear.

1. Move the shift lever from D (Drive) to M (Manual Mode).
2. With the vehicle stopped, press the (+) end of the button to select 2 (Second) or 3 (Third) gear. The vehicle will start from a stop position in 2 (Second) or 3 (Third) gear.
3. Once moving, select the desired drive gear.

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

This vehicle has ABS, an advanced electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid.

When the vehicle begins to drive away, ABS checks itself. A momentary motor or clicking noise might be heard while this test is going on, and it might even be noticed that the brake pedal moves a little. This is normal.

If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light stays on. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light on page 5-13*.

If driving safely on a wet road and it becomes necessary to slam on the brakes and continue braking to avoid a sudden obstacle, a computer senses the wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each wheel.

ABS can change the brake pressure to each wheel, as required, faster than any driver could. This can help you steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As the brakes are applied, the computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: ABS does not change the time needed to get a foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, there will not be enough time to apply the brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even with ABS.

Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let ABS work. You may hear the ABS pump or motor operating and feel the brake pedal pulsate. This is normal.

Braking in Emergencies

ABS allows you to steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help more than even the very best braking.

Electric Parking Brake

The vehicle has an Electric Parking Brake (EPB). The switch for the EPB is in the centre console. The EPB can always be activated, even if the ignition is off. To prevent draining the battery, avoid repeated cycles of the EPB system when the engine is not running.

The system has a parking brake status light and a parking brake warning light. See *Electric Parking Brake Light on page 5-12*. There are also three Driver Information Centre

(DIC) messages. See *Brake System Messages on page 5-21* for more information. In case of insufficient electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released.

Before leaving the vehicle, check the parking brake status light to ensure that the parking brake is applied.

EPB Apply

The EPB can be applied any time the vehicle is stopped. The EPB is applied by momentarily lifting up on the EPB switch. Once fully applied, the parking brake status light will be on. While the brake is being applied, the status light will flash until full apply is reached. If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, have the vehicle serviced. Do not drive the vehicle if the parking brake status light is flashing. See your dealer. See *Electric Parking Brake Light on page 5-12* for more information.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is in motion, a chime will sound, and a DIC message will be displayed. The vehicle will decelerate as long as the switch is held in the up position. Releasing the EPB switch during deceleration will release the parking brake. If the switch is held in the up position until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

If the parking brake status light flashes continuously, the EPB is only partially applied or released, or there is a problem with the EPB. A DIC message will be displayed. If this light flashes continuously, release the EPB, and attempt to apply it again. If this light continues to flash, do not drive the vehicle. See your dealer.

If the parking brake warning light is on, the EPB has detected an error in another system and is operating with reduced functionality. To apply the EPB when this light is on, lift up on the EPB switch and hold it in the up position. Full application of the parking brake by the EPB system may take longer than normal when this light is on. Continue to hold the switch until the parking brake status light remains on. If the parking brake warning light is on, see your dealer.

The vehicle may automatically apply the EPB in some situations when the vehicle is not moving. This is normal, and is done to periodically check the correct operation of the EPB system.

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

EPB Release

To release the EPB, place the ignition in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position, apply and hold the brake pedal, and push down momentarily on the EPB switch. If you attempt to release the EPB without the brake pedal applied, a chime will sound, and a DIC

message will be displayed. The EPB is released when the parking brake status light is off.

If the parking brake warning light is on, the EPB has detected an error in another system and is operating with reduced functionality. To release the EPB when this light is on, push down on the EPB switch and hold it in the down position. EPB release may take longer than normal when this light is on. Continue to hold the switch until the parking brake status light is off. If the light is on, see your dealer.

⚠ Caution

Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

Automatic EPB Release

The EPB will automatically release if the vehicle is running, placed into gear, and an attempt is made to drive away. Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied, to preserve parking brake lining life.

Brake Assist

The Brake Assist feature is designed to assist the driver in stopping or decreasing vehicle speed in emergency driving conditions. This feature uses the stability system hydraulic brake control module to supplement the power brake system under conditions where the driver has quickly and forcefully applied the brake pedal in an attempt to quickly stop or slow down the vehicle. The stability system hydraulic brake control module increases brake pressure at each corner of the vehicle until the ABS activates. Minor brake pedal pulsation or pedal movement during this time is normal and the driver should continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates The Brake Assist feature will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released or brake pedal pressure is quickly decreased.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

This vehicle has an HSA feature, which may be useful when the vehicle is stopped on a grade. This feature is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling, either forward or rearward, during vehicle drive off. After the driver completely stops and holds the vehicle in a complete standstill on a grade, HSA will be automatically activated. During the transition period between when the driver releases the brake pedal and starts to accelerate to drive off on a grade, HSA holds the braking pressure for a maximum of two seconds to ensure that there is no rolling. The brakes will automatically release when the

accelerator pedal is applied within the two-second window. It will not activate if the vehicle is in a drive gear and facing downhill, or if the vehicle is facing uphill and in R (Reverse).

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control System (TCS)

The vehicle has a TCS that limits wheel spin. This is especially useful in slippery road conditions. The system operates only if it senses that the front wheels are spinning too much or are beginning to lose traction. When this happens, the system works the front brakes and reduces engine power by closing the throttle and managing engine spark to limit wheel spin.

This light will flash when the traction control system is limiting wheel spin.

The system may be heard or felt while it is working, but this is normal.

If the vehicle is in cruise control when TCS begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control will automatically disengage. The cruise control may be re-engaged when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 9-20*.

When this light is on solid, the system will not limit wheel spin. Adjust your driving accordingly.

The Traction Control System is automatically enabled whenever the vehicle is started. To limit wheel spin, especially in slippery road conditions, always leave the system enabled. TCS can be turned off if needed.

It is recommended to leave the system on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn the system off if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow, and you want to “rock” the vehicle to attempt to free it.

To turn the system off or on, press and release this button on the centre console.

The Traction Off light comes on to indicate that TCS has been turned off.

Traction Control Operation

Traction control limits wheel spin by reducing engine power to the wheels (engine speed management) and by applying brakes to each individual wheel (brake-traction control) as necessary.

The traction control system is enabled automatically when the vehicle is started, and it will activate and flash the ESC/TCS light if it senses either of the front wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction while driving.

⚠ Caution

If the wheel(s) of one axle are allowed to spin excessively while the ESC/TCS, ABS and Brake warning lights and the SERVICE ESC and/or SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL messages are displayed, the differential could be damaged. The repairs

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Reduce engine power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively while these lights and this message are displayed.

⚠ Caution

When traction control is turned off, it is possible to lose traction. If you attempt to shift with the front wheels spinning with a loss of traction, it is possible to cause damage to the transmission. Do not attempt to shift when the front wheels do not have traction. Damage caused by misuse of the vehicle is not covered by the new vehicle warranty. See your Service/Warranty booklet for additional information.

The traction control system may activate on dry or rough roads or under conditions such as heavy acceleration while turning or abrupt upshifts/downshifts of the transmission. When this happens, a reduction in acceleration may be noticed, or a noise or vibration may be heard. This is normal.

If the vehicle is in cruise control when the system activates, the ESC/TCS light will flash and the cruise control will automatically disengage. The cruise control may be re-engaged when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 9-20*.

Adding non-dealer accessories can affect the vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-2*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

The vehicle has an Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system which combines antilock brake, traction and stability control systems and helps the driver maintain directional control of the vehicle in most driving conditions.

When you first start the vehicle and begin to drive away, the system performs several diagnostic checks to ensure there are no problems. The system may be heard or felt while it is working. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle. The system should initialise before the vehicle reaches 32 km/h.

If the system fails to turn on or activate, the ESC/TCS light illuminates in the instrument cluster and the appropriate message will be displayed.

See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-25*.

This light will flash on the instrument cluster when the ESC system is both on and activated.

The system may be heard or felt while it is working. This is normal.

When the light is on solid, the system will not assist the driver in maintaining directional control of the vehicle. Adjust your driving accordingly.

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is automatically enabled whenever the vehicle is started. To assist the driver with vehicle directional control, especially in slippery road conditions, the system should always be left on. But, ESC can be turned off if needed.

If the vehicle is in cruise control when the system begins to assist the driver maintain directional control of the vehicle, the ESC/TCS light will flash and the cruise control will automatically disengage. The cruise control system may be re-engaged when road conditions allow. See *Cruise Control on page 9-20*.

The ESC/TCS button is on the centre console.

The traction control system can be turned off or back on by pressing the ESC/TCS button. To disable both traction control and ESC, press and hold the button until both the and illuminate in the instrument cluster.

When the ESC system is turned off, the traction off light and the ESC/TCS warning light will be on to warn the driver that both traction control and ESC are disabled.

To enable both traction control and ESC again, press . and extinguish in the instrument cluster.

It is recommended to leave the system on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn the system off if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice or snow, and you want to “rock” the vehicle to attempt to free it.

ESC may also turn off automatically if it determines that a problem exists with the system. The appropriate messages and the ESC/TCS light will be on solid to warn the driver that ESC is disabled and requires service. If the problem does not clear after restarting the vehicle, see your dealer for service. See *Ride Control System Messages on page 5-25*.

Adding non-dealer accessories can affect the vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications on page 10-2*.

Cruise Control

The cruise control lets the vehicle maintain a speed of about 40 km/h or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below 40 km/h.

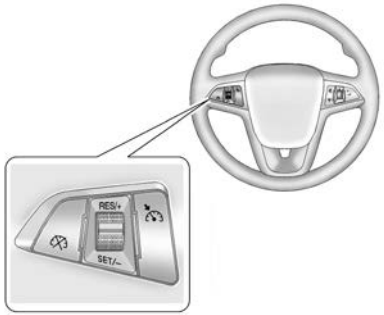
With the Traction Control System (TCS) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC), the system may begin to limit wheel spin while you are using cruise control. If this happens, the cruise control will automatically disengage. See *Traction Control System (TCS) on page 9-16* or *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on page 9-18*. When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, the cruise control can be turned back on.

If the brakes are applied, the cruise control shuts off.

⚠ Warning

Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. Do not use the cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tyre traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.



The cruise control buttons are on the steering wheel.

(On/Off): Press to turn the cruise control system on and off. An indicator light will turn on or off in the instrument cluster.

(Cancel): Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

RES/+ (Resume/Accel): Move the thumbwheel up briefly to make the vehicle resume to a previously set speed or hold upwards to

accelerate. If cruise control is already active, use to increase vehicle speed.

SET/− (Set/Coast): Move the thumbwheel down briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control. If cruise control is already active, use to decrease speed.

Setting Cruise Control

If the cruise button is on when not in use, it could get bumped and go into cruise when not desired. Keep the cruise control button off when cruise is not being used.

To set a speed:

1. Press to turn cruise control on.
2. Get up to the speed desired.
3. Move the thumbwheel down toward SET/− and release it. The desired set speed briefly appears in the instrument cluster.
4. Remove foot from the accelerator.

Resuming a Set Speed

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, the cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory. Once the vehicle speed is about 40 km/h or greater, move the thumbwheel up toward RES/+ briefly and then release it. The vehicle returns to the previously set speed.

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Move the thumbwheel up toward RES/+ and hold it until the vehicle accelerates to the desired speed, then release it.
- To increase the speed in small increments, briefly move the thumbwheel up toward RES/+ and then release it. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h faster.

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Move the thumbwheel toward SET/− and hold until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To slow down in very small increments, briefly move the thumbwheel toward SET/−. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h slower.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle slows down to the previous set cruise control speed. While pressing the accelerator pedal or shortly following the release to override cruise control, briefly moving the thumbwheel toward SET/– will result in cruise control set to the current vehicle speed.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control works on hills depends upon the vehicle speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle speed. When going downhill, you might have to brake or shift to a lower gear to maintain the vehicle speed. When the brakes are applied the cruise control is disengaged.

Ending Cruise Control

There are three ways to end cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal; when cruise control disengages, the indicator light will not be lit.
- Press .
- Press to turn the cruise control system off completely. The cruise control cannot be resumed.

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory by pressing or if the vehicle is turned off.

Driver Assistance Systems

Ultrasonic Parking Assist

The Ultrasonic Parking Assist (UPA) system assists the driver with parking and avoiding objects while in R (Reverse). UPA operates at speeds less than 8 km/h. The sensors on the rear bumper detect objects up to 2.5 m behind the vehicle, and at least 20 cm off the ground and below boot level. The detection distance may be less during warmer or humid weather.

⚠ Danger

The parking assist system does not detect children, pedestrians, cyclists, animals, or objects located below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. It is not available at speeds greater than 8 km/h. To

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with parking assist, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before moving forward or reversing.

How the System Works

UPA comes on automatically when the shift lever is moved into R (Reverse). A single tone sounds to indicate the system is working.

UPA operates only at speeds less than 8 km/h.

An obstacle is indicated by audible beeps. The interval between the beeps becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to the obstacle. When the distance is less than 30 cm the beeping is a continuous tone for 8 seconds.

Turning the System On and Off

The UPA system can be turned on and off using the park assist button next to the shift lever.

The indicator light next to the park assist button lights up when the system is on and turns off when it has been disabled.

When the system is off, a message displays on the Driver Information Centre (DIC). The message disappears after a short period of time.

UPA defaults to the on setting each time the vehicle is started.

The system turns off automatically if a trailer is connected.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The following messages may be displayed on the DIC:

SERVICE PARK ASSIST: If this message occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system.

PARK ASSIST OFF: If the UPA system does not activate due to a temporary condition, this message displays on the DIC. This can occur under the following conditions:

- The driver has disabled the system.
- The ultrasonic sensors are not clean. Keep the vehicle's rear bumper free of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush. For cleaning instructions, see *Exterior Care on page 10-57*.
- The park assist sensors are covered by frost or ice. Frost or ice can form around and behind the sensors and may not always be seen. This can occur after washing the vehicle in cold

weather. The message may not clear until the frost or ice has melted.

- An object was hanging out of the boot during the last drive cycle. Once the object is removed, UPA will return to normal operation.
- The bumper is damaged. Take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system.
- Other conditions, such as vibrations from a jackhammer or the compression of air brakes on a very large truck, are affecting system performance.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

The vehicle has a Rear Vision Camera (RVC) system. Read this entire section before using it.

The RVC can assist the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

The RVC system does not display children, pedestrians, cyclists, animals, or any other object located outside the camera's field of view, below the bumper, or under the vehicle. Perceived distances may be different from actual distances. Do not reverse the vehicle using only the RVC screen, during longer, higher speed reversing manoeuvres, or where there could be cross traffic. Failure to use proper care before reversing may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Always check behind and around the vehicle before reversing.

An image appears on the infotainment screen when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse). The infotainment screen goes to the previous screen after a few seconds once the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse).

To return to the previous screen sooner, do one of the following:

- Press a button on the infotainment system.
- Shift into P (Park).
- Reach a vehicle speed of 8 km/h.

Symbols

The RVC system has a feature that lets the driver view symbols on the infotainment screen while using the RVC. The Ultrasonic Park Assist (UPA) system must not be disabled to use the caution symbols. The error message Rear Parking Assist Symbols Unavailable may display if UPA has been disabled and the symbols have been turned on. See *Ultrasonic Parking Assist on page 9-22*.

The symbols appear and may cover an object when viewing the infotainment screen when an object is detected by the UPA system.

To turn the symbols on or off:

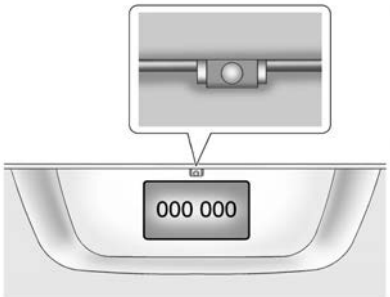
1. Shift into P (Park).
2. Press the CONFIG button.
3. Select Display Settings.
4. Select Rear Camera Option.
5. Select Symbols. When a check mark appears next to the Symbols option, symbols will appear.

Rear Vision Camera Error Messages

SERVICE REAR VISION CAMERA SYSTEM: This message can display on the infotainment screen when the system is not operating properly. If this condition persists, see your dealer.

If any other problem occurs or if a problem persists, see your dealer.

Rear Vision Camera Location

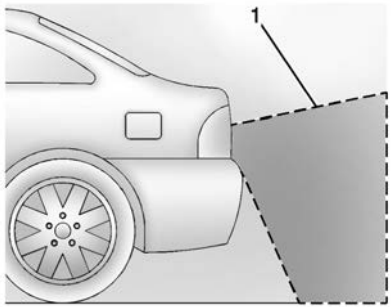


The camera is located above the number plate.

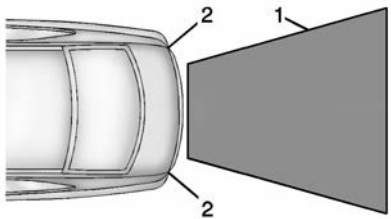
The area displayed by the camera is limited.

It does not display objects that are close to either corner or under the bumper and can vary depending on vehicle orientation or road conditions. The distance of the image that appears on the screen is different from the actual distance.

The following illustrations show the field of view that the camera provides.



1. View displayed by the camera.



1. View displayed by the camera.

2. Corner of the rear bumper.

When the System Does Not Seem To Work Properly

The RVC system may not work properly or display a clear image if:

- It is dark.
- The sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Ice, snow, mud, or anything else builds up on the camera lens. To clean the lens, rinse it with water, and wipe it with a soft cloth.
- The rear of the vehicle is in an accident, the position and mounting angle of the camera can change or the camera can be affected. Be sure to have the camera and its position and mounting angle checked at your dealer.

Fuel

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of this vehicle, keeps the engine clean, and maintains optimum vehicle performance.

Fuel Additives

⚠ Caution

FUEL ADDITIVES

Various additives are used in the formulation of good quality fuel and the use of supplementary additives in fuel is not required unless specified by Holden. Under no circumstances should fuel containing the manganese additive known as MMT (methyl cyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl) be used, as this additive is known to cause contamination of catalytic converters, spark plugs and the

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

malfunction of On-Board-Diagnostic (OBD) systems. The use of fuel additives that are not recommended by Holden may affect your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty to the extent that Holden considers that the additives affect the specifications and quality of the vehicle.

Fuel for Petrol Engines

Use clean, unleaded fuel of at least 91 octane rating. High octane (premium unleaded) can be used and will provide slight improvement in engine power and torque. Purchasing your fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel which contains abnormal fuel properties.

⚠ Caution

Use of fuel with too low an octane rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

Prohibited Fuels

Fuels containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, as well as reformulated fuels are available in some cities. If these fuels comply with the previously described specification, then they are acceptable to use. Equivalent standardised fuels with an ethanol content of max. 10% by volume may be used.

⚠ Warning

Under no circumstances should you use fuel containing more than 10% ethanol. Use of such fuels may result in engine malfunction, starting and operating difficulties,

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

and materials degradation. These adverse effects could result in permanent damage to your vehicle and the risk of personal injury. Purchasing your fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel with more than 10% ethanol or fuel which contains abnormal fuel properties.

⚠ Caution

Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

Fuel for Diesel Engines

Only use commercially available diesel fuel meeting the requirements of Euro standard EN 590 to operate diesel engines. The use of biodiesel containing up to 5% fatty acid methyl ester ("FAME"), also known as "B5", is also permitted provided that the FAME complies with Euro standard EN 14214 and the resultant B5 blend complies with Euro standard EN 590. Do not use marine diesel oils, heating oils or entirely or partially plant-based diesel fuels, such as rape seed oil or bio diesel containing more than 5% FAME.

⚠ Warning

Use only biodiesel blends with a maximum of 5% FAME and which meet Euro standard EN 590. Purchasing your fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel with

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

more than 5% FAME or fuel which contains abnormal fuel properties. Using a biodiesel that does not have the certification referred to above, or has FAME content exceeding 5%, may cause serious damage to your vehicle (including engine failure). Damage attributable to the use of non-certified biodiesel is not covered by your New Vehicle Warranty. In no event will GM Holden be responsible or bear any liability for any damage or loss that may arise in connection with the use of any fuel that does not meet this specification.

Filling the Tank

⚠ Warning

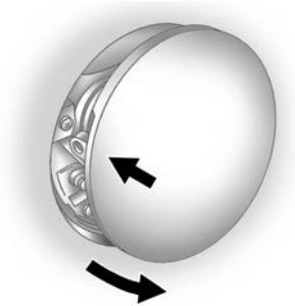
Fuel vapours and fuel fires burn violently and can cause injury or death.

- To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the fuel pump.
- Turn off the engine when refuelling.
- Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel.
- Do not leave the fuel pump unattended.
- Do not re-enter the vehicle while pumping fuel.
- Keep children away from the fuel pump and never let children pump fuel.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Fuel can spray out if the fuel cap is opened too quickly. This spray can happen if the tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop then unscrew the cap all the way.



The fuel cap is behind the fuel door on the driver side of the vehicle. If equipped, the fuel door is locked when the vehicle doors are locked. Press on the RKE transmitter to unlock. To open the fuel door, push and release the rearward centre edge of the door.

Turn the fuel cap anticlockwise to remove. While refuelling, hang the fuel cap from the hook on the fuel door. Reinstall the cap by turning it clockwise until it clicks.

If the cap is not properly installed, the malfunction indicator lamp will come on. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-10*.

Do not top off or overfill the tank and wait a few seconds before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Exterior Care on page 10-57*.

⚠ Warning

If a fire starts while you are refuelling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

⚠ Caution

If a new fuel cap is needed, be sure to get the right type of cap from your dealer. The wrong type of fuel cap might not fit properly, might cause the malfunction indicator lamp to light, and could damage the fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 5-10*.

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ Warning

Filling a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle can cause fuel vapours that can ignite either by static electricity or other means. You or others could be badly burnt and the vehicle could be damaged. Always:

- Use approved fuel containers.
- Remove the container from the vehicle or boot before filling.
- Place the container on the ground.
- Place the nozzle inside the fill opening of the container before dispensing fuel, and

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

keep it in contact with the fill opening until filling is complete.

- Fill the container no more than 95% full to allow for expansion.
- Do not smoke, light matches, or use lighters while pumping fuel.
- Avoid using mobile phones or other electronic devices.

Towing

Trailer Towing

The word trailer is used throughout this section and includes all types of towed vehicles, such as caravans, boat trailers or any other special purpose trailer.

Towing

Handling, durability and economy may be affected by towing a trailer.

For recommended and mandatory towing equipment, see “Towing and loading equipment” later in this section.

A Holden Dealer will assist with supply and installation of towing equipment.

Overloading

Never exceed the loads given for the towing equipment fitted to the vehicle.

All mandatory equipment must be fitted, otherwise you may void the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty, to the extent that Holden considers the overloading or missing equipment to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle. See “Towing and loading equipment” later in this section.

Maximum towing capacities (kg) – braked trailer

Engine	Petrol	Diesel
Transmission	**Automatic**	**Automatic**
Sedan	1200	1200

Note: The maximum unbraked towing capacity for all vehicles is 750 kg.

⚠ Warning

Holden towing equipment is recommended where it is available. Where it is not available, no recommendation is made as to the make of equipment which should be used. Holden will not accept liability for defects occurring in towing equipment not marketed by Holden or for defects in the vehicle arising from the use of such equipment or for loss or injury caused by use of such equipment. The use of such

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

equipment may void your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty, to the extent that Holden considers the non-recommended equipment affects the specifications or quality of your Holden vehicle. It is inadvisable to mix and match different brands of towing equipment, as equipment is usually designed as an integrated package.

⚠ Warning

When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and enter if the boot is open.

When towing a trailer:

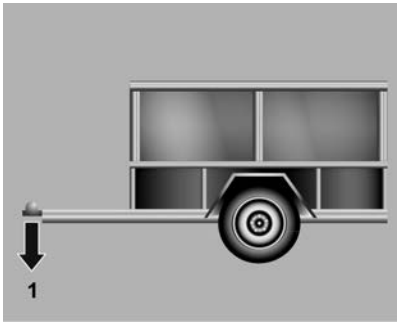
- Do not drive with the boot open.
- Fully open the dashboard vents and set the Climate Control to face or bi-level mode and outside air, recirculation off.

For more information about carbon monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-8*.

Automatic transmission

The vehicle can tow in D (Drive) but M (Manual Mode) is recommended. See *Manual Mode on page 9-11*. Use a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often.

Trailer recommendations



A trailer hitched to a vehicle places a weight on the tow bar. This weight is called the tow bar ball weight or tow ball load (1).

The tow ball load should be between 5% and 10% of the loaded trailer weight. Adjust by moving items forwards or backwards within the trailer, to change the balance.

If the tow ball load is too light or too heavy, the steering and handling of the vehicle may be affected.

Axle loads must not be exceeded when the tow ball load is included. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight on page 12-3*.

If maximum axle loads are exceeded, weight should be removed from the rear of the vehicle and transferred onto the trailer.

Ensure the weight of the packed trailer is not greater than the towing capacity of the Holden approved tow bar package fitted to the vehicle.

Towing and loading equipment

Tow load	Mandatory equipment
Up to 1,200 kg	Holden 1,200 kg rated tow bar
	Holden trailer wiring harness
	Brakes on the trailer if the aggregate trailer mass (ATM) is more than 750 kg

⚠ Warning

At no time may the total front or rear axle load exceed the maximums specified. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight on page 12-3*.

Towing precautions

- When heavily loading the vehicle or when towing, inflate tyres to the maximum recommended pressure. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-34*.
- Tighten the tow ball retaining nut to 140 N•m (Newton metres) and check the torque frequently.
- Vehicles handle differently when towing. Take a couple of short distance trips with the trailer before taking a long trip.
- Have the vehicle and trailer correctly maintained and serviced, with particular attention given to the brakes, tyres, suspension, wheel bearings, towing coupling and lighting.
- Use an extended-arm mirror on both sides of the vehicle if necessary.
- Headlamps may need re-aiming after the loaded trailer has been hitched, particularly if a load distribution hitch is not used.
- Use a lower gear and the brakes, when descending steep hills.
- At highway speeds it is recommended that cruise control be used. Cruise control prevents the transmission from unnecessarily changing gears, particularly on gradients.
- Do not use axle-mounted hitches.
- Ensure that the tow bar does not obscure the rear number plate. Remove the tow bar tongue when not required for towing.

- If a tow bar is removed, have any mounting holes in the underbody sealed to prevent entry of exhaust fumes, dust and water.

Trailer brakes

- Trailer brakes are mandatory on trailers with an aggregate trailer mass (ATM) of more than 750 kg.
- Consult the appropriate regulatory body in your State or Territory for the legal requirements of trailer brakes.

Running-in when towing

It is recommended that a new vehicle be driven for at least 1,500 km before towing.

If towing is necessary before this, do not exceed 80 km/h. This also applies if the vehicle is fitted with a new or reconditioned engine, transmission or rear axle.

Vehicle maintenance

More frequent vehicle maintenance is required when using the vehicle to tow. Refer to the Service/ Warranty Booklet in the vehicle's glove box.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

⚠ Caution

Some electrical equipment can damage the vehicle or cause components to not work and would not be covered by the warranty. Always check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment.

Add-on equipment can drain the vehicle's 12-volt battery, even if the vehicle is not operating.

The vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to the vehicle, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-22* and *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 3-22*.

Vehicle Care

General Information
General Information 10-2
Accessories and Modifications 10-2

Vehicle Checks
Doing Your Own Service Work 10-2
Bonnet 10-3
Engine Compartment Overview 10-4
Engine Oil 10-7
Engine Oil Life System (Diesel) 10-10
Automatic Transmission Fluid 10-11
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 10-11
Cooling System 10-12
Engine Coolant 10-13
Engine Overheating 10-16
Power Steering Fluid (Diesel Engine Only) 10-17
Washer Fluid 10-18
Brakes 10-19
Brake Fluid 10-20
Battery 10-21

Headlamp Aiming
Headlamp Aiming 10-22

Bulb Replacement
Bulb Replacement 10-23
Halogen Bulbs 10-23
LED Lighting 10-23
Headlamps, Front Turn Signal and Park Lamps ... 10-23
Fog Lamps 10-25
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Brake Lamps, and Reverse Lamps 10-25
Number Plate Lamp 10-25
Replacement Bulbs 10-26

Electrical System
Electrical System Overload 10-26
Fuses 10-27
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 10-27
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 10-31

Wheels and Tyres
Tyres 10-33
Tyre Pressure 10-34
Tyre Inspection 10-35
Tyre Rotation 10-35
When It Is Time for New Tyres 10-36
Buying New Tyres 10-37
Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance 10-37
Wheel Replacement 10-37
Tyre Chains 10-38
If a Tyre Goes Flat 10-38
Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit 10-40
Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit 10-48
Tyre Changing 10-48
Full-Size Spare Tyre 10-53

Jump Starting
Jump Starting 10-53

Towing
Towing the Vehicle 10-56

Appearance Care
Exterior Care 10-57
Interior Care 10-62
Floor Mats 10-65

General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine parts and trained and supported service people.

Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-dealer accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance and safety, including such things as airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control, and stability control. These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to vehicle components resulting from modifications or the installation or use of non-GM certified parts, including control module or software modifications, is not covered under the terms of the vehicle warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. See your dealer to accessorise the vehicle using genuine GM Accessories installed by a dealer technician.

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to work on your vehicle if you do not have the proper knowledge, service manual, tools, or parts. Always follow owner manual procedures and consult the service manual for your vehicle before doing any service work.

If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service the vehicle than this manual can.

This vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Airbag System Check on page 3-22*.

Keep a record with all parts receipts and list the kilometres and the date of any service work performed.

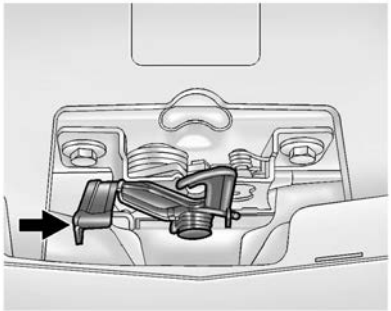
⚠ Caution

Even small amounts of contamination can cause damage to vehicle systems. Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluids, reservoir caps, or dipsticks.

Bonnet

To open the bonnet:

1. Pull the bonnet release handle with this symbol on it. It is inside the vehicle to the right of the steering column.

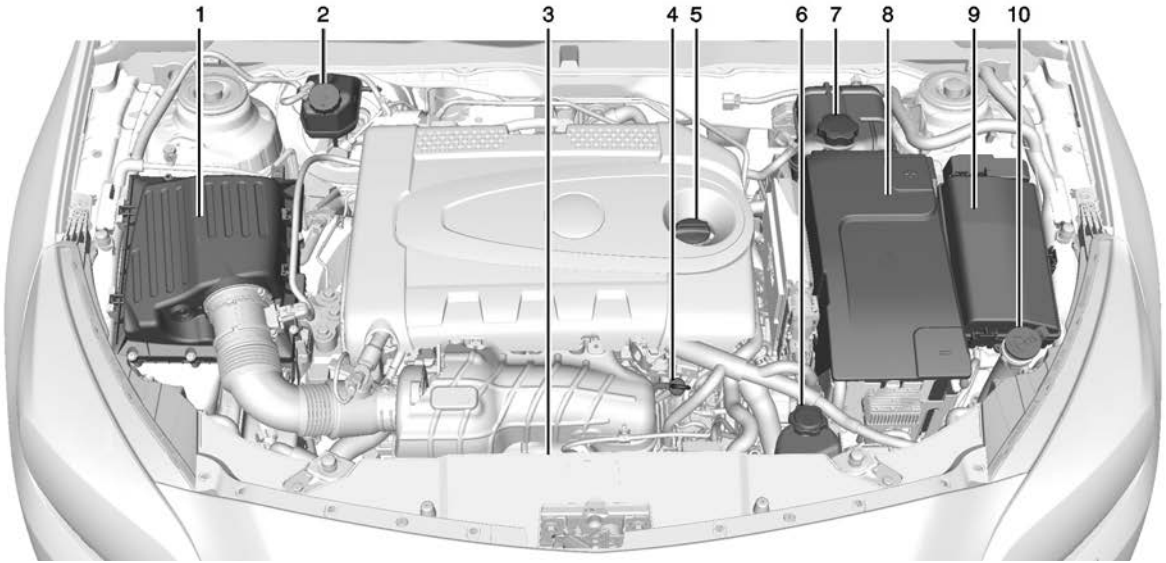


2. Go to the front of the vehicle to find the secondary bonnet release handle. The handle is under the front edge of the bonnet near the centre. Push the handle to the right and simultaneously raise the bonnet.

To close the bonnet:

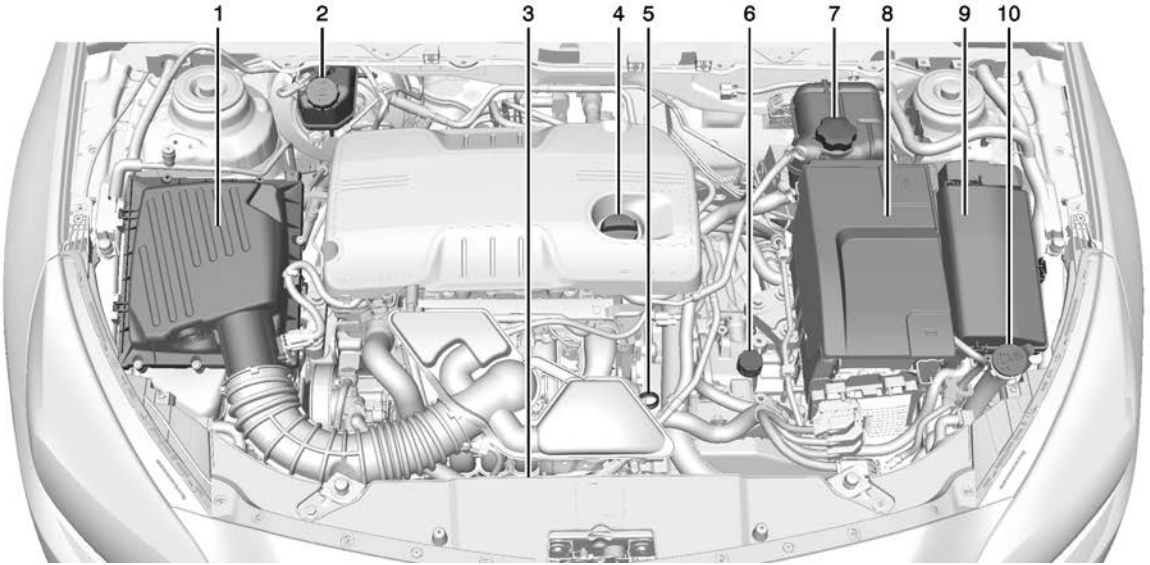
1. Before closing the bonnet, be sure all the filler caps are properly installed.
2. Lower the bonnet 20 cm (8 in) above the vehicle and release it so it fully latches. Check to make sure the bonnet is firmly closed. Repeat the process if necessary.

Engine Compartment Overview



2.0L L4 Diesel Engine

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-11*.
2. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See “Brake Fluid” under *Brakes on page 10-19*.
3. Engine Cooling Fans (Out of View). See *Cooling System on page 10-12*.
4. Engine Oil Dipstick. See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 10-7*.
5. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 10-7*.
6. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir. See *Power Steering Fluid (Diesel Engine Only) on page 10-17*.
7. Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System on page 10-12*.
8. *Battery on page 10-21*.
9. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 10-27*.
10. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-18*.



2.4L L4 Petrol Engine

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 10-11*.
2. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brakes on page 10-19*.
3. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View). See *Cooling System on page 10-12*.
4. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 10-7*.
5. Engine Oil Dipstick. See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 10-7*.
6. Automatic Transmission Oil Fill Cap.
7. Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System on page 10-12*.
8. *Battery on page 10-21*.
9. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 10-27*.
10. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid on page 10-18*.

Engine Oil

To ensure proper engine performance and long life, careful attention must be paid to engine oil. Following these simple, but important steps will help protect your investment:

- Always use engine oil approved to the proper specification and of the proper viscosity grade. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” in this section.
- Check the engine oil level regularly and maintain the proper oil level. See “Checking Engine Oil” and “When to Add Engine Oil” in this section.
- Change the engine oil at the appropriate time. See *Engine Oil Life System (Diesel) on page 10-10*.
- Always dispose of engine oil properly. See “What to Do with Used Oil” in this section.

Checking Engine Oil

It is a good idea to check the engine oil level at each fuel fill. In order to get an accurate reading, the vehicle must be on level ground. The engine oil dipstick handle is a loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-4* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

Obtaining an accurate oil level reading is essential:

1. If the engine has been running recently, turn off the engine and allow several minutes for the oil to drain back into the oil pan. Checking the oil level too soon after engine shutoff will not provide an accurate oil level reading.

⚠ Warning

The engine oil dipstick handle may be hot; it could burn you. Use a towel or glove to touch the dipstick handle.

2. Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

When to Add Engine Oil

Petrol

Diesel

If the oil is below the MIN (1) (minimum) mark, add 1 L of the recommended oil and then recheck the level. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” in this section for an explanation of what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-6*.

⚠ Caution

Do not add too much oil. Oil levels above or below the acceptable operating range shown on the dipstick are harmful to the engine. If you find that you have an oil level above the operating range, i.e., the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged. You should drain out the excess oil or limit driving of the vehicle and seek a service professional to remove the excess amount of oil.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-4* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when through.

Selecting the Right Engine Oil (Petrol Engines)

Selecting the right engine oil depends on both the proper oil specification and viscosity grade. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-3*.

Specification

Use and ask for licensed engine oils with the dexos1™ certification mark. Engine oils meeting the requirements of the vehicle should have the dexos1™ certification mark on the container. This certification mark indicates that the oil has been approved to the dexos1™ specification. If you are unsure whether the oil is approved to the dexos1™ specification, ask your service provider.

⚠ Caution

Use only engine oil that is approved to the dexos1™ specification or equivalent engine oil. Failure to use the recommended engine oil can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Viscosity Grade

SAE 5W-30 is the best viscosity grade for the vehicle. Do not use other viscosity grade oils such as SAE 10W-30, 10W-40, or 20W-50.

Cold Temperature Operation: In an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below −29°C (−20° F), an SAE 0W-30 oil may be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, always select an oil of the correct specification. See “Specification” earlier in this section.

Selecting the Right Engine Oil (Diesel Engines)

Selecting the right engine oil depends on both the proper oil specification and viscosity grade:

Specification

Use and ask for licensed engine oils with the dexos2™ certification mark. Engine oils meeting the requirements of the vehicle should have the dexos2™ certification mark on the container. This certification mark indicates that the oil has been approved to the dexos2™ specification. If you are unsure whether the oil is approved to the dexos2™ specification, ask your service provider.

⚠ Caution

Use only engine oil that is approved to the dexos2™ specification or equivalent engine oil. Failure to use the recommended engine oil can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Viscosity Grade

SAE 5W-30 is the best viscosity grade for the vehicle. Do not use other viscosity grade oils such as SAE 10W-30, 10W-40, or 20W-50.

Cold Temperature Operation: In an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below −29°C (−20° F), an SAE 0W-30 oil may be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will

provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, always select an oil of the correct specification. See “Specification” earlier in this section.

Engine Oil Additives/Engine Oil Flushes

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils with the dexos specification and displaying the dexos certification mark are all that is needed for good performance and engine protection.

Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the rubbish or pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

Engine Oil Life System (Diesel)

When to Change Engine Oil

Diesel vehicles have a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include engine revolutions, engine temperature, and kilometres driven. Based on driving conditions, the kilometres at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on. See *Engine Oil Messages on page 5-23*. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1 000 km. It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and, at this time, the system must be reset. Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly over the course of an oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 5 000 km since the last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

Reset the system whenever the engine oil is changed so that the system can calculate the next engine oil change. To reset the system:

1. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN with the engine off.
2. Press the DIC MENU button on the turn signal lever to enter the Vehicle Information Menu. Use the thumbwheel to scroll through the menu items until you reach REMAINING OIL LIFE.
3. Press the SET/CLR button to reset the oil life at 100%.
4. Turn the ignition off.

The system is reset when the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message is off and the REMAINING OIL LIFE 100% message is displayed.

If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes back on when the vehicle is started, the engine oil life system has not been reset. Repeat the procedure.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the transmission fluid level.
A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to the dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

There is a special procedure for checking and changing the transmission fluid. Because this procedure is difficult, this should be done at the dealer. Contact your dealer for additional information.

Change the fluid at the intervals listed in the Service/Warranty booklet, and be sure to use the fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-3*.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

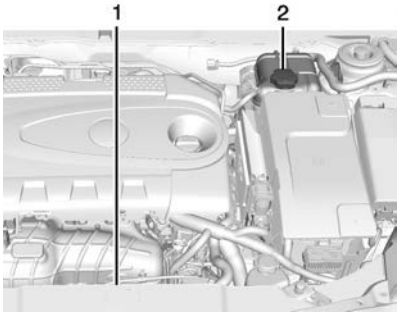
The engine air cleaner/filter is in the engine compartment on the driver side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-4* for more information on location.

When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

Inspect the air cleaner/filter at the scheduled maintenance intervals. See the Service/Warranty booklet for more information. If you are driving in dusty/dirty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.

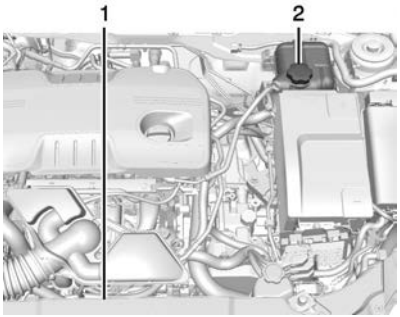
Cooling System

The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct working temperature.



2.0L L4 Diesel Engine

1. Engine Cooling Fan(s) (Out of View)
2. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap



2.4L L4 Petrol Engine

1. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View)
2. Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap

⚠ Warning

An electric engine cooling fan under the bonnet can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any under bonnet electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burnt.

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burnt. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

⚠ Caution

Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® can cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant could require changing sooner. Any repairs may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use DEX-COOL (silicate-free) coolant in the vehicle.

Engine Coolant

The cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL® engine coolant. See the Service/Warranty booklet and *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-3*.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating on page 10-16*.

What to Use

⚠ Warning

Adding only plain water or some other liquid to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water and other liquids, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burnt. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant.

Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant. If using this mixture, nothing else needs to be added. This mixture:

- Gives freezing protection down to −37°C (−34°F), outside temperature.
- Gives boiling protection up to 129°C (265°F), engine temperature.
- Protects against rust and corrosion.
- Will not damage aluminium parts.
- Helps keep the proper engine temperature.

⚠ Caution

If improper coolant mixture, inhibitors, or additives are used in the vehicle cooling system, the engine could overheat and be

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

damaged. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack engine cooling parts. The repairs may not be covered by the warranty. Use only the proper mixture of engine coolant for the cooling system. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-3*

Never dispose of engine coolant by putting it in the rubbish, pouring it on the ground, or into sewers, streams, or bodies of water. Have the coolant changed by an authorised service centre, familiar with legal requirements regarding used coolant disposal. This will help protect the environment and your health.

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

Check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the mark indicated by the arrows, add a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done. See *Engine Overheating on page 10-16*.

The coolant level should be at or above the mark indicated by the arrows on the coolant surge tank. If it is not, there may be a leak at the pressure cap or in the radiator hoses, heater hoses, radiator, water pump, or somewhere else in the cooling system.

How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank

⚠ Warning

You can be burnt if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

⚠ Caution

This vehicle has a specific coolant fill procedure. Failure to follow this procedure could cause the engine to overheat and be severely damaged.

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and surge tank pressure cap to cool.

If coolant is needed, add the proper DEX-COOL coolant mixture at the coolant surge tank.

1. Remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot. Turn the pressure cap slowly anticlockwise about two or two and one-half turns.

   If a hiss is heard, wait for that to stop. This will allow any pressure still left to be vented out the discharge hose.
2. Keep turning the pressure cap slowly, and remove it.
3. Fill the coolant surge tank with the proper mixture, to the mark indicated by the arrows. Wait about five minutes, then check to see if the level is below the mark. If the level is below the mark, add additional coolant to bring the level up to the mark. Repeat this procedure until the level remains constant at the mark for at least five minutes.
4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until the upper radiator hose can be felt getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fan.

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank might be lower. If the level is lower than the mark, add more of the proper mixture to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches the mark.
5. Replace the pressure cap tightly

⚠ Caution

If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.

Engine Overheating

There is an engine coolant temperature gauge on the vehicle instrument cluster to warn of engine overheating. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge on page 5-9*.

If the decision is made not to lift the bonnet when this warning appears, get service help right away.

If the decision is made to lift the bonnet, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

Then check to see if the engine cooling fan(s) are running. If the engine is overheating, the fan(s) should be running. If not, do not continue to run the engine and have the vehicle serviced.

⚠ Caution

Running the engine without coolant may cause damage or a fire. Vehicle damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

If Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

⚠ Warning

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the bonnet. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Just turn it off and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down. Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the bonnet.

If you keep driving when the engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burnt. Stop the engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.

If No Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.
- Tows a trailer.

If the overheat warning is displayed with no sign of steam:

1. Turn the air conditioning off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. In heavy traffic, let the engine idle in N (Neutral) while stopped. If it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or Neutral and let the engine idle.

If the coolant temperature gauge is no longer in the overheat zone, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe vehicle distance from the vehicle in front. If the gauge is not in the overheat zone, continue to drive normally.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away.

If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the warning is still displayed, turn off the engine until it cools down.

Power Steering Fluid (Diesel Engine Only)

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-4* for information on the location of the power steering fluid reservoir.

When to Check Power Steering Fluid

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless a leak is suspected in the system or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

How to Check Power Steering Fluid

Check the level when the engine is cool.

To check the power steering fluid:

1. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.

⚠ Caution

Extremely small amounts of contamination can cause steering system damage and cause it to not work properly. Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluid side of the reservoir cap/dipstick or to enter the reservoir.

2. Unscrew the cap and pull it straight up.
3. Wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
4. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
5. Remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

The fluid level should be between MIN and MAX on the dipstick.

What to Use

To determine what kind of fluid to use, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-3*. Always use the proper fluid.

Washer Fluid

What to Use

When windscreen washer fluid is needed, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If operating the vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

Adding Washer Fluid

When the windscreen washer fluid reservoir is low, the WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID message displays on the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Washer Fluid Messages on page 5-26*.

Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-4* for reservoir location.

⚠ Caution

- Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in the windscreen washer. It can damage the windscreen washer system and paint.
- Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage the washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system.
- When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer instructions for adding water.
- Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.

Brakes

This vehicle has disc brakes. Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go or be heard all the time the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

⚠ Warning

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to a crash. When the brake wear warning sound is heard, have the vehicle serviced.

⚠ Caution

Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tyres are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications in *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-6*.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service might be required.

Brake Adjustment

Every time the brakes are applied, with or without the vehicle moving, the brakes adjust for wear.

Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. The vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality brake parts. When parts of the braking system are replaced, be sure to get new, approved replacement parts. If this is not done, the brakes might not work properly. For example, installing disc brake pads that are wrong for the vehicle, can change the balance between the front and rear brakes — for the worse. The braking performance expected can change in many other ways if the wrong replacement brake parts are installed.

Brake Fluid

The brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT 4 brake fluid as indicated on the reservoir cap. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-4* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the fluid level in the reservoir might go down:

- The fluid level goes down because of normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake hydraulic system can also cause a low fluid level. Have the brake hydraulic system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later the brakes will not work well.

Do not top off the brake fluid. Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

⚠ Warning

If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burnt, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

When the brake fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 5-12*.

What to Add

Use only new DOT 4 brake fluid from a sealed container. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-3*.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This helps keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

⚠ Warning

Using brake fluid other than GM recommended brake fluid may cause corrosion to components of the braking system and reduced braking performance.

Use only new brake fluid. Use of old, used or inferior brake fluid may endanger the functioning of the brake system.

⚠ Caution

- Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake hydraulic system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in the brake hydraulic system can damage brake hydraulic system parts so badly that they will have to

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.

- If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on the vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately.

⚠ Warning

Used brake fluid should not be disposed of with regular rubbish.

Have the brake fluid changed by an authorised service centre, familiar with the requirements of the law regarding used brake fluid disposal, to help protect the environment and your health.

Battery

Refer to the replacement number shown on the original battery label when a new battery is needed. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 10-4* for battery location.

⚠ Warning

Do not use a match or flame near a vehicle's battery. If you need more light, use a flashlight.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not smoke near a vehicle's battery.

When working around a vehicle's battery, shield your eyes with protective glasses.

Keep children away from vehicle batteries.

⚠ Warning

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be hurt badly if you are not careful.

Follow instructions carefully when working around a battery.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, which can cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Vehicle Storage

Infrequent Usage: Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery to keep the battery from running down.

Extended Storage: Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger.

Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp aim has been preset and should need no further adjustment.

If the vehicle is damaged in a crash, the headlamp aim may be affected. If adjustment to the headlamps is necessary, see your dealer.

Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, see *Replacement Bulbs on page 10-26*.

For any bulb-changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

Halogen Bulbs

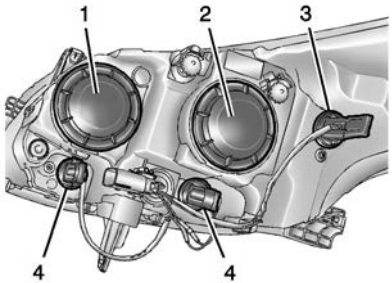
⚠ Warning

Halogen bulbs have pressurised gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

LED Lighting

This vehicle has several LED lamps. For replacement of any LED lighting assembly, contact your dealer.

Headlamps, Front Turn Signal and Park Lamps

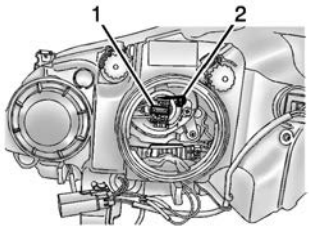


Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

1. High-Beam Headlamp
2. Low-Beam Headlamp
3. Position Lamp
4. Turn Signal Lamps

Low-Beam Headlamp

1. For the passenger side bulb, remove the windscreen washer bottle filler neck by firmly pulling it straight up and out of the bottle.
2. Remove the cap from the back of the headlamp assembly by turning it anticlockwise.

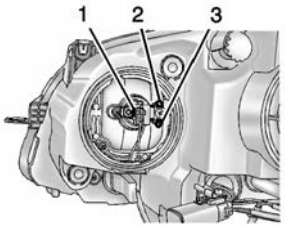


3. Disconnect the electrical connector (1).
4. Disengage the spring clip (2) from the bulb by pressing down on the end and then swing upward.
5. Remove the bulb from the lamp assembly.

6. Install a new bulb in the lamp assembly.
7. Install the spring clamp, pressing in on the end and then swing downward.
8. Connect the electrical connector.
9. Replace the cap from the back of the headlamp assembly by turning it clockwise.
10. For the passenger side, reinstall the windscreen washer bottle filler neck by firmly pushing it straight into the bottle. Ensure that the filler neck clip engages into the under bonnet electrical centre retainer.

High-Beam Headlamp

1. Remove the cap from the back of the headlamp assembly by turning it anticlockwise.



2. Disconnect the electrical connector by pressing the release tab (1) of the connector inwards and pulling the connector from the bulb.
3. Disengage the upper spring clip end (2) from the bulb by pressing down and then swing upward.
4. Disengage the lower spring clip end (3) from the bulb by pressing down and then swing downward.
5. Remove the bulb from the lamp assembly.
6. Install a new bulb in the lamp assembly.
7. Install the spring clips.
8. Connect the electrical connector.
9. Replace the cap from the back of the headlamp assembly by turning it clockwise.

Front Turn Signal and Position Lamp

To replace the front turn signal or position lamp:

1. For the passenger side bulb, remove the windscreen washer bottle filler neck by firmly pulling it straight up and out of the bottle.
2. Remove the bulb socket from the headlamp assembly by turning it anticlockwise.
3. Remove the bulb from the socket.
4. Replace the bulb in the bulb socket.
5. Install the bulb socket in the headlamp assembly by turning it clockwise.

6. For the passenger side, reinstall the windscreen washer bottle filler neck by firmly pushing it straight into the bottle. Ensure that the filler neck clip engages into the under bonnet electrical centre retainer.

Fog Lamps

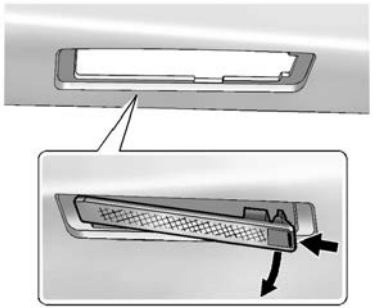
For replacement of the front fog lamp bulbs, see your dealer.

Taillamps, Turn Signal, Brake Lamps, and Reverse Lamps

For replacement of the rear bulbs and LED assemblies (if fitted), see your dealer.

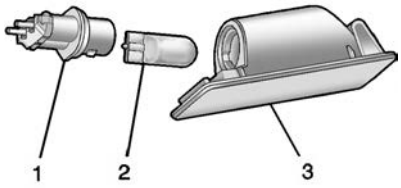
Number Plate Lamp

To replace one of these bulbs:



Passenger Side Shown, Driver Side Similar

1. Push the release tab toward the lamp assembly.
2. Pull the lamp assembly down to remove.



3. Turn the bulb socket (1) anticlockwise to remove it from the lamp assembly (3).
4. Pull the bulb (2) straight out of the bulb socket.
5. Push the replacement bulb straight into the bulb socket and turn the bulb socket clockwise to install it into the lamp assembly.
6. Push the lamp assembly back into position until the release tab locks into place.

Replacement Bulbs

Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Reverse Lamp	W16W
Deck Lid Taillamp	W3W LL
Front Fog Lamp	H10
Front Turn Signal Lamp	WY21W
High-Beam Headlamp (Base)	H1
Number Plate Lamp	W5W LL
Low-Beam Headlamp (Base)	H7LL
Front Position Lamp	W21/5WLL
Brake Lamp/ Taillamp	W21W
Rear Turn Signal Lamp	WY21W

For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer.

Electrical System

Electrical System Overload

The vehicle has fuses and circuit breakers to protect against an electrical system overload.

When the current electrical load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the current load returns to normal or the problem is fixed. This greatly reduces the chance of circuit overload and fire caused by electrical problems.

Fuses and circuit breakers protect power devices in the vehicle.

Replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If there is a problem on the road and a fuse needs to be replaced, the same amperage fuse can be borrowed. Choose some feature of the vehicle that is not needed to use and replace it as soon as possible.

Headlamp Wiring

An electrical overload may cause the lamps to go on and off, or in some cases to remain off. Have the headlamp wiring checked right away if the lamps go on and off or remain off.

Windscreen Wipers

If the wiper motor overheats due to heavy snow or ice, the windscreen wipers will stop until the motor cools and will then restart.

Although the circuit is protected from electrical overload, overload due to heavy snow or ice may cause wiper linkage damage. Always clear ice and heavy snow from the windscreen before using the windscreen wipers.

If the overload is caused by an electrical problem and not snow or ice, be sure to get it fixed.

Fuses

The wiring circuits in the vehicle are protected from short circuits by fuses. This greatly reduces the chance of damage caused by electrical problems.

To check a fuse, look at the silver-coloured band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure to replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

Fuses of the same amperage can be temporarily borrowed from another fuse location, if a fuse goes out. Replace the fuse as soon as possible.

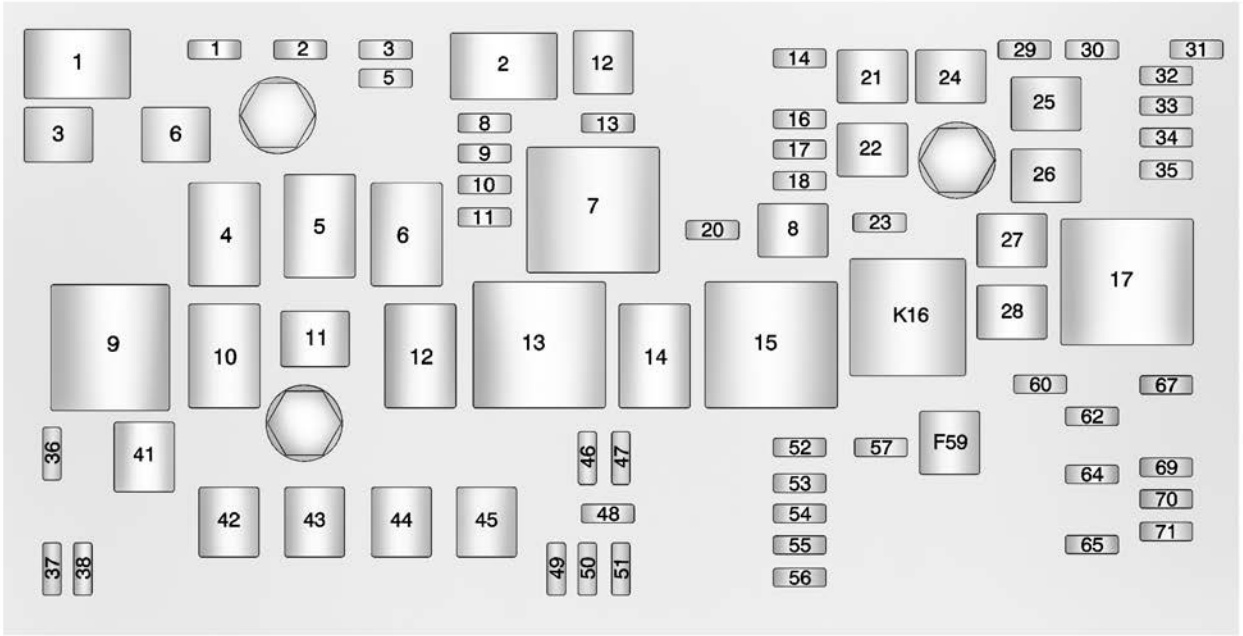
To identify and check fuses, circuit breakers, and relays, see *Engine Compartment Fuse Block on page 10-27* and *Instrument Panel Fuse Block on page 10-31*.

Engine Compartment Fuse Block

The engine compartment fuse block is located on the passenger side of the engine compartment, near the battery. To remove the cover, squeeze the three tabs together and lift the cover.

⚠ Caution

Spilling liquid on any electrical component on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.


1
1
2
3
5
2
12
14
21
24
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
3
6
8
9
10
11
13
16
17
18
22
25
26
4
5
6
7
20
8
23
27
17
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
K16
28
60
67
62
36
41
46
47
52
57
F59
64
69
70
71
42
43
44
45
48
53
54
55
56
65
37
38
49
50
51

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

Mini Fuses	Usage
1	Transmission Control Module Battery
2	Engine Control Module Battery
3	Air Conditioning Compressor Clutch
5	Engine Control Module Ignition
8	Coil Even
9	Coil Odd
10	Engine Control Module
11	Non Walk Veh
13	Transmission/Fuel System Control Module Ignition
14	Low Beam/DRL Right
16	PT Run/Crank Ignition
17	SDM Ignition
18	Vehicle Air Purification System
20	Fuel Pump
23	Variable Effort Steering
29	Left Seat Power Lumber Control
30	Right Seat Power Lumber Control
31	Trailer
32	VCM VBATT 06
33	Front Heated Seats
34	Antilock Brake System Valve
35	Amplifier
36	AFL/AHL Motor
37	Right High Beam
38	Left High Beam
46	Term 87A
47	Non Walk 02
48	Foglamp
49	Right HID Low Beam
50	Left HID Low Beam
51	Horn
52	MIL Ignition
53	Body Run/Crank
54	IP Run/Crank
55	Front Power Windows/Mirrors
56	Windscreen Washer Pump
57	Ign Not R/C Electric Steering Column Lock
60	Heated Mirror
62	Canister Vent Solenoid

Mini Fuses	Usage
64	Adaptive Forward Lighting/Headlamp Levelling Electric
65	Anti-Theft Warning Siren Horn
67	Fuel System Control Module
69	Battery Voltage Sensor
70	Rain Sensor, Lane Departure Warning, Ultrasonic Park Assist
71	PEPS Battery

J-Case Fuses	Usage
6	Front Wiper
12	Starter
21	Rear Power Window
22	Sunroof

J-Case Fuses	Usage
24	Front Power Window
25	PEPS Motor
26	Antilock Brake System Pump
27	Electric Parking Brake
28	Rear Window Demister
41	Brake Vacuum Pump
42	Cooling Fan K2
43	Heated Rear Seats
44	Headlamp Washer
45	Cooling Fan K1
59	Diesel Fuel Heater

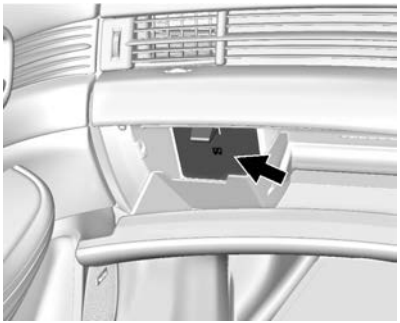
Mini Relays	Usage
7	Powertrain
9	Cooling Fan K2
13	Cooling Fan K1

Mini Relays	Usage
15	Run/Crank
16	Diesel Fuel Heater
17	Window/Mirror Demister

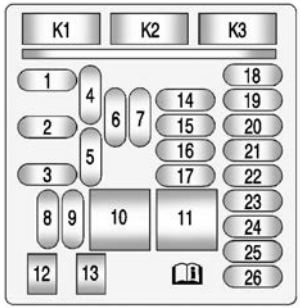
Micro Relays	Usage
1	Air Conditioning Compressor Clutch
2	Starter
3	Cooling Fan K7
4	Front Wiper Speed
5	Front Wiper On/Off
6	Low Beam DRL Right
8	Fuel Pump
10	Cooling Fan K3
11	Headlamp Washer
12	Cooling Fan K3

Micro Relays	Usage
14	Low Beam HID/ Left DRL

Instrument Panel Fuse Block



The instrument panel fuse block is located inside the glove box. To access the fuses, open the fuse panel door by pulling down at the top.



Instrument Panel Fuse Block

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

Fuses	Usage
1	Steering Wheel Controls Backlight
2	Left Mirror Turn Signal, Right Rear Turn Signal, Left Front Turn Signal, Headlamp Washer
3	Right Mirror Turn Signal, Left Brake Lamp, Right Front Turn Signal, Left Rear Turn Signal
4	Radio
5	Universal Hands-Free Phone
6	Front Accessory Power Outlet
7	Console Bin Power Outlet
8	Number Plate Lamp, Centre High Mounted Brake Lamp, Rear Fog Lamps, Right Brake Lamp, Left Taillamp, Hazard Switch Backlight, Boot Release, Indicator Light Dimming, Keyless Start

Fuses	Usage
	Indicator Light, Windscreen Washer Pump
9	Left Low Beam Headlamp, Left Daytime Running Lamp
10	Power Door Locks (J-Case Fuse)
11	Front Heater Ventilation Air Conditioning/Blower (J-Case Fuse)
12	Passenger Seat (Circuit Breaker)
13	Driver Seat (Circuit Breaker)
14	Diagnostic Link Connector
15	Airbag, SDM
16	Boot Release

Fuses	Usage
17	Heater Ventilation Air Conditioning Controller
18	Audio Main
19	Displays
20	Spare
21	Instrument Panel Cluster
22	Ignition Switch
23	Right Low Beam Headlamp, Right Daytime Running Lamp
24	Ambient Lighting, Boot Lamp, Switch Backlighting
25	Spare
26	Electric Steering Column Lock

Relays	Usage
K1	Boot Release
K2	Not Used
K3	Power Outlet Relay

Wheels and Tyres

Tyres

Every new GM vehicle has high-quality tyres made by a leading tyre manufacturer. See the warranty manual for information regarding the tyre warranty and where to get service. For additional information refer to the tyre manufacturer.

⚠ Warning

- Poorly maintained and improperly used tyres are dangerous.
- Overloading the tyres can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Underinflated tyres pose the same danger as overloaded tyres. The resulting crash could cause serious injury. Check all tyres frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tyre pressure should be checked when the tyres are cold.
- Overinflated tyres are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact — such as when hitting a pothole. Keep tyres at the recommended pressure.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Worn or old tyres can cause a crash. If the tread is badly worn, replace them.
- Replace any tyres that have been damaged by impacts with potholes, curbs, etc.
- Improperly repaired tyres can cause a crash. Only the dealer or an authorised tyre service centre should repair, replace, dismount, and mount the tyres.

Tyre Pressure

Tyres need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

⚠ Caution

Neither tyre underinflation nor overinflation is good. Underinflated tyres, or tyres that do not have enough air, can result in:

- Tyre overloading and overheating, which could lead to a blowout.
- Premature or irregular wear.
- Poor handling.
- Reduced fuel economy.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Overinflated tyres, or tyres that have too much air, can result in:

- Unusual wear.
- Poor handling.
- Rough ride.
- Needless damage from road hazards.

Tyre Placard

The tyre placard may display the tyre size and pressures using the following icons:

: Tyre size, minimum load rating, minimum speed rating.

: Tyre pressure at normal load.

: Tyre pressure for fuel economy driving at normal load.

: Tyre pressure at maximum load.

: Spare tyre pressures.

The correct pressures for tyres are shown on the tyre placard in the driver's door opening (B-pillar) and in the tyre pressure table.

The front tyre pressures are shown in the left column and the rear tyre pressures are shown in the right column.

When to Check

Check the tyres once a month or more.

Do not forget the spare tyre, if the vehicle has one.

How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to check tyre pressure. Proper tyre inflation cannot be determined by looking at the tyre. Check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are cold, meaning the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or no more than 2.0 km.

Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem. Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tyre and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the inflation pressure is low, add air until the recommended pressure is reached. If the inflation pressure is high, press on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve to release air.

Re-check the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge.

Return the valve caps on the valve stems to prevent leaks and keep out dirt and moisture.

Tyre Inspection

We recommend that the tyres, including the spare tyre, if the vehicle has one, be inspected for signs of wear or damage at least once a month.

Replace the tyre if:

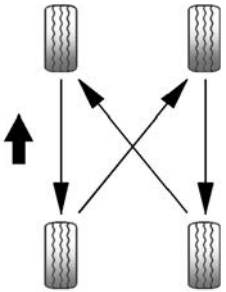
- The indicators at three or more places around the tyre can be seen.
- There is cord or fabric showing through the tyre's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tyre has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tyre has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

Tyre Rotation

Tyres should be rotated at the intervals specified in the Service/Warranty booklet.

Tyres are rotated to achieve a more uniform wear for all tyres. The first rotation is the most important.

Any time unusual wear is noticed, rotate the tyres as soon as possible, check for proper tyre inflation pressure, and check for damaged tyres or wheels. If the unusual wear continues after the rotation, check the wheel alignment. See *When It Is Time for New Tyres on page 10-36* and *Wheel Replacement on page 10-37*.



When rotating the tyres, always use the correct rotation pattern shown here.

Do not include the spare tyre in the tyre rotation.

Adjust the front and rear tyres to the recommended inflation pressure on the tyre placard after the tyres have been rotated. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-34*.

Check that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See “Wheel Nut Torque” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-6*.

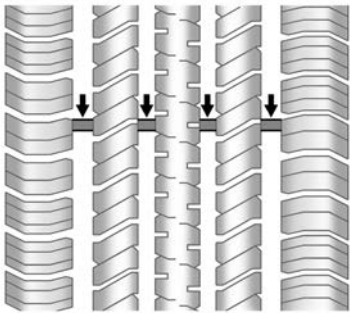
⚠ Warning

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.

Lightly coat the centre of the wheel hub with wheel bearing grease after a wheel change or tyre rotation to prevent corrosion or rust build-up. Do not get grease on the flat wheel mounting surface or on the wheel nuts or bolts.

When It Is Time for New Tyres

Factors such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions affect the wear rate of the tyres.



Treadwear indicators are one way to tell when it is time for new tyres. Treadwear indicators appear when the tyres have only 1.6 mm or less

of tread remaining. See *Tyre Inspection on page 10-35* and *Tyre Rotation on page 10-35*.

The rubber in tyres ages over time. This also applies to the spare tyre, if the vehicle has one, even if it is never used. Multiple factors including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance affect how fast aging takes place. GM recommends that tyres, including the spare if equipped, be replaced after six years, regardless of tread wear.

Buying New Tyres

Refer to the tyre placard on the vehicle for tyre size and load rating.

Using a different size or type of tyre may affect:

- Ride
- Handling
- Speedometer accuracy
- Vehicle ground clearance
- Vehicle payload capacity
- Maximum vehicle speed
- Tyre clearance
- Snow chain clearance

Tyres with heavy treads and those made for better grip in the wet, should only be operated within the limits recommended by the manufacturer.

Tyres with a higher speed or load rating are acceptable, provided they are fitted to a suitable rim size.

⚠ Warning

Tyres with a lower speed or load rating are NOT acceptable for fitment to the vehicle.

Replacing the factory fitted wheels and tyres with non-genuine wheels and tyres may affect the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty as well as the vehicle's insurance policy.

Contact a Holden Dealer for advice on suitable tyres.

Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance

The tyres and wheels were aligned and balanced at the factory to provide the longest tyre life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tyre balancing are not necessary on a regular basis. Consider an alignment check if there is unusual tyre wear or the vehicle is significantly pulling to one side or the other. Some slight pull to the left or right, depending on the crown of the road and/or other road surface variations such as troughs or ruts, is normal. If the vehicle is vibrating when driving on a smooth road, the tyres and wheels may need to be rebalanced. See your dealer for proper diagnosis.

Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts should be replaced.

If the wheel leaks air, replace it. Some aluminium wheels can be repaired. See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel that is needed.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset, and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

Tyre Chains

⚠ Warning

Do not use tyre chains. There is not enough clearance. Tyre chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension, or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tyre chains could cause loss of control and a crash.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for the vehicle's tyre size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To avoid vehicle damage, drive slow and readjust or remove the traction device if it contacts the vehicle. Do not spin the wheels. If traction devices are used, install them on the front tyres.

If a Tyre Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tyre to blow out while driving, especially if the tyres are maintained properly. See *Tyres on page 10-33*. If air goes out of a tyre, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if there is ever a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tyre fails, the flat tyre creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction as used in a skid. Stop pressing the accelerator pedal and steer to straighten the vehicle. It may be very bumpy and noisy. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

⚠ Warning

Driving on a flat tyre will cause permanent damage to the tyre. Re-inflating a tyre after it has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat may cause a blowout and a serious crash. Never attempt to re-inflate a tyre that has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat. Have your dealer or an authorised tyre service centre repair or replace the flat tyre as soon as possible.

⚠ Warning

All passengers must be out of the vehicle when it is being jacked.

Do not jack a vehicle with a trailer attached. Remove the trailer first.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Only jack the vehicle on hard, level surfaces.

Ensure moving parts of the jack are adequately lubricated before use.

Use the jack only at the designated lifting points. Use in other locations may result in the vehicle falling off the jack, or damage to the vehicle.

If using a jack (or hoist) other than the jack supplied with the vehicle, see “Trolley jack or vehicle hoist” under *Tyre Changing on page 10-48*.

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

Use the jack only for lifting the vehicle when changing wheels.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Vehicles with alloy wheels may have a steel spare wheel. Drive carefully and do not exceed 80 km/h if the tyre size or tread pattern of the spare tyre is different to the other tyres on the vehicle. Although the spare tyre was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly.

After installing the spare tyre on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible to check the inflation pressure is correct. Have the flat tyre repaired or replaced and installed back on the vehicle as soon as possible.

If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place, well off the road, if possible. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-2*.

⚠ Danger

Changing a tyre can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall causing injury or death. Find a level place to change the tyre. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

1. Park on a hard, level surface, in a safe location.
2. Set the parking brake firmly.
3. Place the shift lever in P.
4. Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.

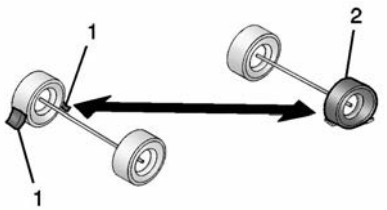
(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

5. Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.
6. Place wheel blocks on both sides of the tyre at the opposite corner of the tyre being changed.

This vehicle may come with a jack and spare tyre or a tyre sealant and compressor kit. To use the jacking equipment to change a spare tyre safely, follow the instructions below. Then see *Tyre Changing on page 10-48*. To use the tyre sealant and compressor kit, see *Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit on page 10-40*.

When the vehicle has a flat tyre (2), use the following example as a guide to assist you in the placement of wheel blocks (1).



1. Wheel Block
2. Flat Tyre

The following information explains how to repair or change a tyre.

Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit

⚠ Warning

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see *Engine Exhaust on page 9-8*.

⚠ Warning

Overinflating a tyre could cause the tyre to rupture and you or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the tyre sealant and compressor kit instructions and inflate the tyre to its recommended pressure. Do not exceed the recommended pressure.

⚠ Warning

Storing the tyre sealant and compressor kit or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store the tyre sealant and compressor kit in its original location.

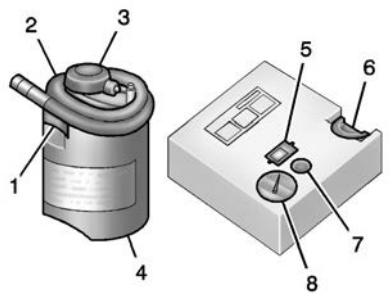
If this vehicle has a tyre sealant and compressor kit, there may not be a spare tyre or tyre changing equipment, and on some vehicles there may not be a place to store a tyre.

The tyre sealant and compressor can be used to temporarily seal punctures up to 6 mm (0.25 in) in the tread area of the tyre. It can also be used to inflate an underinflated tyre.

If the tyre has been separated from the wheel, has damaged sidewalls, or has a large puncture, the tyre is too severely damaged for the tyre sealant and compressor kit to be effective.

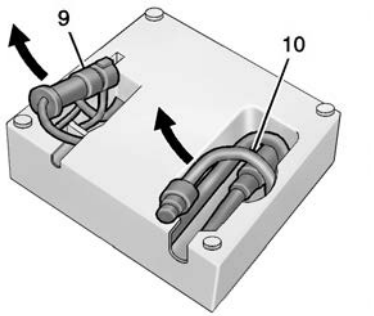
Read and follow all of the tyre sealant and compressor kit instructions.

The kit includes:



1. Sealant Canister Inlet Valve
2. Sealant/Air Hose
3. Base of Sealant Canister

4. Tyre Sealant Canister
5. On/Off Button
6. Slot on Top of Compressor
7. Pressure Deflation Button
8. Pressure Gauge



9. Power Plug
10. Air Only Hose

Tyre Sealant

Read and follow the safe handling instructions on the label adhered to the tyre sealant canister (4).

Check the tyre sealant expiration date on the tyre sealant canister. The tyre sealant canister (4) should be replaced before its expiration date. Replacement tyre sealant canisters are available at your local dealer.

There is only enough sealant to seal one tyre. After usage, the tyre sealant canister must be replaced.

Using the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit to Temporarily Seal and Inflate a Punctured Tyre

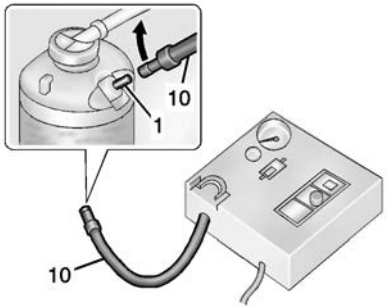
When using the tyre sealant and compressor kit during cold temperatures, warm the kit in a heated environment for five minutes. This will help to inflate the tyre faster.

If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-2*.

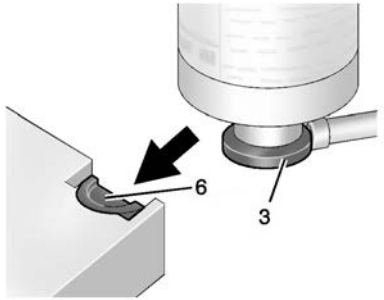
See *If a Tyre Goes Flat on page 10-38* for other important safety warnings.

Do not remove any objects that have penetrated the tyre.

1. Remove the tyre sealant canister (4) and compressor from its storage location. See *Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit on page 10-48*.
2. Remove the air only hose (10) and the power plug (9) from the bottom of the compressor.
3. Place the compressor on the ground near the flat tyre.



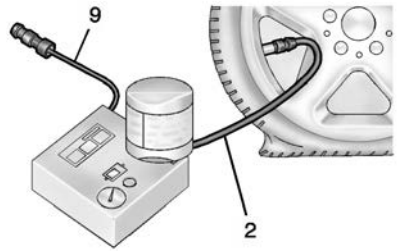
4. Attach the air only hose (10) to the sealant canister inlet valve (1) by turning it clockwise until tight.



5. Slide the base of the tyre sealant canister (3) into the slot on the top of the compressor (6) to hold it upright.

   Make sure the tyre valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.

6. Remove the valve stem cap from the flat tyre by turning it anticlockwise.



7. Attach the sealant/air hose (2) to the tyre valve stem by turning it clockwise until tight.

8. Plug the power plug (9) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets on page 5-5*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.

9. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.

10. Press the on/off button (5) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit on.

    The compressor will inject sealant and air into the tyre.

    The pressure gauge (8) will initially show a high pressure while the compressor pushes the sealant into the tyre. Once the sealant is completely dispersed into the tyre, the pressure will quickly drop and start to rise again as the tyre inflates with air only.

11. Inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (8). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-34*.

    The pressure gauge (8) may read higher than the actual tyre pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate pressure reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

⚠ Caution

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 25 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

further. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant and compressor kit cannot inflate the tyre. Remove the power plug from the accessory power outlet and unscrew the inflating hose from the tyre valve.

12. Press the on/off button (5) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit off.

    The tyre is not sealed and will continue to leak air until the vehicle is driven and the sealant is distributed in the tyre. Therefore, Steps 13–21 must be done immediately after Step 12.

    Be careful while handling the tyre sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

13. Unplug the power plug (9) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
14. Turn the sealant/air hose (2) anticlockwise to remove it from the tyre valve stem.
15. Replace the tyre valve stem cap.
16. Remove the tyre sealant canister (4) from the slot on top of the compressor (6).
17. Turn the air only hose (10) anticlockwise to remove it from the tyre sealant canister inlet valve (1).
18. Turn the sealant/air hose (2) clockwise onto the sealant canister inlet valve (1) to prevent sealant leakage.
19. Return the air only hose (10) and power plug (9) back to their original storage location.

20. If the flat tyre was able to inflate to the recommended inflation pressure, remove the maximum speed label from the sealant canister and place it in a highly visible location.

    Do not exceed the speed on this label until the damaged tyre is repaired or replaced.
21. Return the equipment to its original storage location in the vehicle.
22. Immediately drive the vehicle 8 km to distribute the sealant in the tyre.
23. Stop at a safe location and check the tyre pressure. Refer to Steps 1–10 under “Using the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tyre (Not Punctured).”

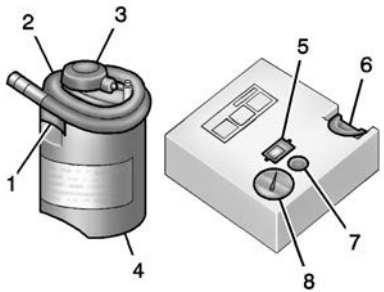
    If the tyre pressure has fallen more than 68 kPa (10 psi) below the recommended inflation pressure, stop driving the vehicle. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant cannot seal the tyre.

    If the tyre pressure has not dropped more than 68 kPa (10 psi) from the recommended inflation pressure, inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure.
24. Wipe off any sealant from the wheel, tyre, or vehicle.
25. Dispose of the used tyre sealant canister (4) at a local dealer or in accordance with local state codes and practices.

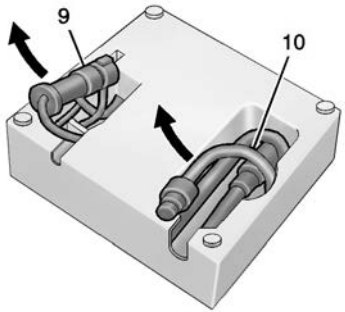
26. Replace it with a new canister available from your dealer.
27. After temporarily sealing a tyre using the tyre sealant and compressor kit, take the vehicle to an authorised dealer within 150 km of driving to have the tyre repaired or replaced.

Using the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tyre (Not Punctured)

The kit includes:



1. Sealant Canister Inlet Valve
2. Sealant/Air Hose
3. Base of Sealant Canister
4. Tyre Sealant Canister
5. On/Off Button
6. Slot on Top of Compressor
7. Pressure Deflation Button
8. Pressure Gauge



9. Power Plug
10. Air Only Hose

If a tyre goes flat, avoid further tyre and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers on page 6-2*.

See *If a Tyre Goes Flat on page 10-38* for other important safety warnings.

1. Remove the compressor from its storage location. See *Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit on page 10-48*.
2. Remove the air only hose (10) and the power plug (9) from the bottom of the compressor.
3. Place the compressor on the ground near the flat tyre.

   Make sure the tyre valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the valve stem cap from the flat tyre by turning it anticlockwise.
5. Attach the air only hose (10) to the tyre valve stem by turning it clockwise until tight.
6. Plug the power plug (9) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets on page 5-5*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.
7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
8. Press the on/off button (5) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit on.

   The compressor will inflate the tyre with air only.
9. Inflate the tyre to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (8). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tyre and Loading Information label. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-34*.

   The pressure gauge (8) may read higher than the actual tyre pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate pressure reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

   If the tyre is inflated higher than the recommended pressure, adjust the excess pressure by pressing the pressure deflation button (7) until the proper pressure reading is reached. This option is only functional when using the air only hose (10).

⚠ Caution

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 25 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven further. The tyre is too severely damaged and the tyre sealant and compressor kit cannot inflate the tyre. Remove the power plug from the accessory power outlet and unscrew the inflating hose from the tyre valve.

10. Press the on/off button (5) to turn the tyre sealant and compressor kit off.

    Be careful while handling the compressor as it could be warm after usage.

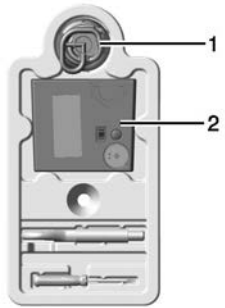
11. Unplug the power plug (9) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
12. Turn the air only hose (10) anticlockwise to remove it from the tyre valve stem.
13. Replace the tyre valve stem cap.
14. Return the air only hose (10) and power plug (9) back to their original storage location.
15. Return the equipment to its original storage location in the vehicle.

The tyre sealant and compressor kit has accessory adapters located in a compartment on the bottom of its housing that can be used to inflate air mattresses, balls, etc.

Storing the Tyre Sealant and Compressor Kit

The tyre sealant and compressor kit is located in the boot.

1. Lift the trim cover.



2. Remove the tyre sealant canister (1) and the compressor (2).

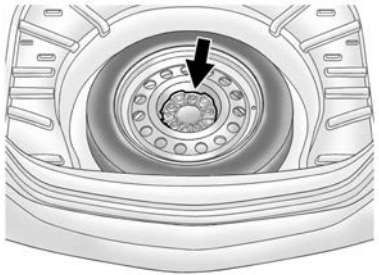
To store the tyre sealant and compressor kit, reverse the steps.

Tyre Changing

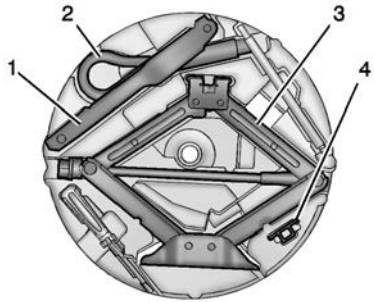
Removing the Spare Tyre and Tools

The equipment you need is located in the boot.

1. Open the boot.
2. Remove the spare tyre cover.



3. Turn the retainer nut anticlockwise and remove the spare tyre.
4. Place the spare tyre next to the tyre being changed.



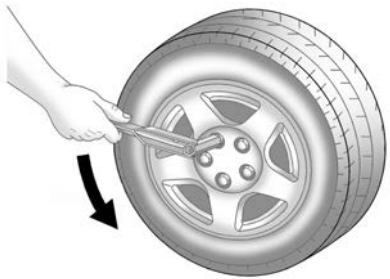
1. Wrench
2. Tow Hook
3. Jack
4. Trim Removal

The jack and tools are stored below the spare tyre.

Place the tools next to the tyre being changed.

Removing the Flat Tyre and Installing the Spare Tyre

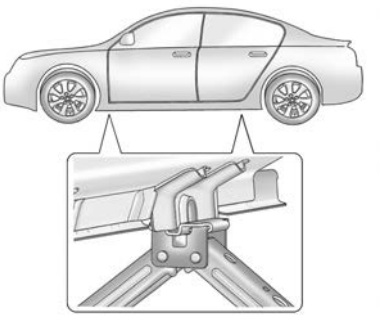
1. Do a safety check before proceeding. See *If a Tyre Goes Flat on page 10-38* for more information.



2. Turn the wheel wrench anticlockwise to loosen all of the wheel nuts, but do not remove them yet.

⚠ Caution

Make sure that the jack lift head is in the correct position or you may damage your vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by your vehicle warranty.



3. Position the jack head, as shown.

   Set the jack to the necessary height before positioning it below the jacking point.

4. Attach the jack lift assist tool to the jack by fitting both ends of the jack and tool over one another.

⚠ Warning

Failure to position the jack as described could cause the vehicle to slip off the jack.

Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

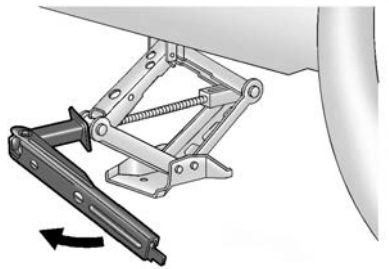
⚠ Warning

Raising the vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle

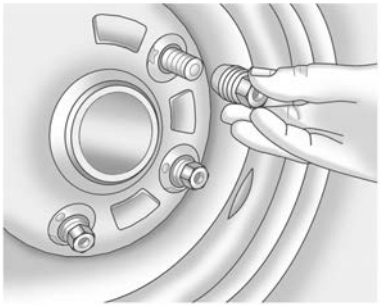
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.



5. Turn the jack handle clockwise to raise the vehicle far enough off the ground for the compact spare to fit under the vehicle.



6. Remove all of the wheel nuts.
7. Remove the flat tyre.

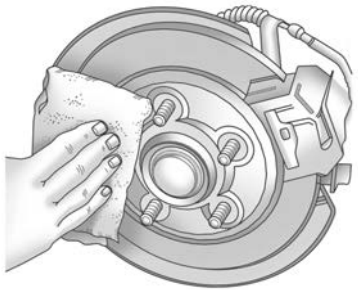
⚠ Warning

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.



8. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces, and spare wheel.
9. Install the compact spare tyre.

⚠ Warning

Never use oil or grease on bolts or nuts because the nuts might come loose. The vehicle's wheel could fall off, causing a crash.

10. Put the wheel nuts back on with the rounded end of the nuts toward the wheel. Turn each nut clockwise by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.
11. Lower the vehicle by turning the jack handle anticlockwise. Lower the jack completely.

⚠ Warning

Wheel nuts that are improperly or incorrectly tightened can cause the wheels to become loose or come off. The wheel nuts should be tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

after replacing. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 12-6* for original equipment wheel nut torque specifications.

⚠ Caution

Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See Capacities and Specifications for the wheel nut torque specification.

12. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly in a criss-cross sequence, as shown.
13. Lower the jack all the way and remove the jack from under the vehicle.
14. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly with the wheel wrench.

⚠ Caution

Wheel covers will not fit on the vehicle's compact spare. If you try to put a wheel cover on the compact spare, the cover or the spare could be damaged.

Storing a Flat or Spare Tyre and Tools

⚠ Warning

Storing a jack, a tyre, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

Store the spare or flat tyre as shown below.

This vehicle has a screw in fastener.

1. Replace the foam, jack and tools, and the tyre in their original storage location.
2. Place the tyre, lying flat, facing up in the spare tyre well.
3. Turn the retainer nut clockwise to secure the tyre.
4. Place the floor cover support over the retainer nut.
5. Place the floor cover on the wheel.

Full-Size Spare Tyre

If this vehicle came with a full-size spare tyre, it was fully inflated when new; however, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly. See *Tyre Pressure on page 10-34*. For instructions on how to remove, install, or store a spare tyre, see *Tyre Changing on page 10-48*.

After installing the spare tyre on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible and check that the spare is correctly inflated.

Have the damaged or flat road tyre repaired or replaced and installed back onto the vehicle as soon as possible so the spare tyre will be available in case it is needed again. Do not mix tyres and wheels of different sizes, because they will not fit. Keep the spare tyre and its wheel together.

Jump Starting

For more information about the vehicle battery, see *Battery on page 10-21*.

If the battery has run down, try to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

⚠ Warning

Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

⚠ Caution

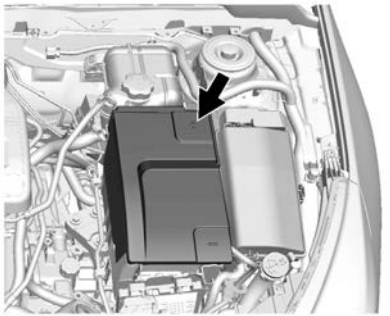
Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.

The jump start positive post is in the engine compartment on the passenger side of the vehicle.

The jump start negative grounding point is the engine block or an engine mounting bolt. Connect to a spot as far away from the discharged battery as possible.

These locations are used instead of a direct connection to the battery.

The positive jump start connection may be under a battery cover or a positive terminal trim cover. Remove the battery cover or open the trim cover to expose the connection.



2.0L L4 Diesel Engine Shown, 2.4L L4 Petrol Engine similar

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

⚠ Caution

If the other vehicle does not have a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use a vehicle that has a 12-volt system with a negative ground for jump starting.

2. Position the two vehicles so that they are not touching.
3. To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put the transmission in P (Park) before setting the parking brake.

⚠ Caution

If any accessories are left on or plugged in during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Whenever possible, turn off or unplug all accessories on either vehicle when jump starting.

4. Turn the ignition off and switch off all lights and accessories in both vehicles, except the hazard warning flashers if needed.

⚠ Warning

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any under bonnet electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

Be sure the battery has enough water. You do not need to add water to the battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low,

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

add de–ionised water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

⚠ Warning

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

5. Connect one end of the red positive (+) cable to the jump start positive (+) post. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
6. Do not let the other end of the red positive (+) cable touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
7. Connect one end of the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote negative (−) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (–) cable does not go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery.

8. Connect the other end of the black negative (–) cable to an unpainted heavy metal engine part away from the dead battery, but not near engine parts that move.
9. Start the engine in the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine at idle speed for at least four minutes.
10. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

⚠ Caution

If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order,

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.

Jumper Cable Removal

Reverse the sequence exactly when removing the jumper cables.

Towing

Towing the Vehicle

⚠ Caution

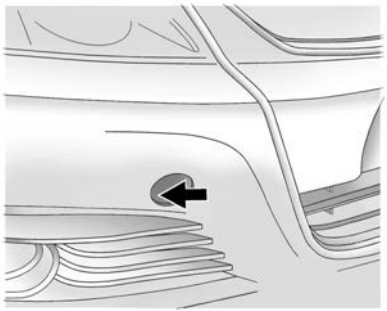
Incorrectly towing a disabled vehicle may cause damage. The damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Have the vehicle towed on a wheel lift tow truck. A flatbed car carrier could damage the vehicle. The wheel lift tow truck must raise the rear of the vehicle and wheel dollies must be used to lift the front wheels off the ground.

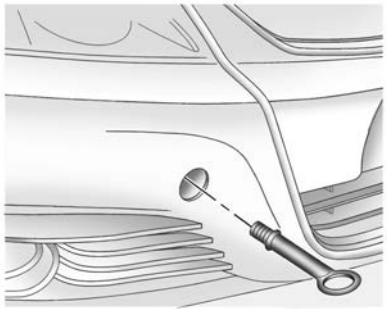
Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed.

⚠ Caution

Improper use of the tow eye can cause vehicle damage. Use caution and low speeds to prevent damage to the vehicle.



Carefully open the cover by lifting at the right hand side edge. The tow eye is located in the boot below the spare tyre.



Install the tow eye into the socket by turning it anticlockwise until it stops in a horizontal position. When the tow eye is removed, reinstall the cover and ensure it is securely located.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Locks

Locks are lubricated at the factory. Use a de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, and have the locks greased after using. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-3*.

Washing the Vehicle

To preserve the vehicle's finish, wash it often and out of direct sunlight.

⚠ Caution

Do not use petroleum-based, acidic, or abrasive cleaning agents as they can damage the vehicle's paint, metal, or plastic parts. If damage occurs, it would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Approved cleaning

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

products can be obtained from your dealer. Follow all manufacturer directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions, and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

⚠ Caution

Avoid using high-pressure washes closer than 30 cm (12 in) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 8,274 kPa (1,200 psi) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

The symbol is on any under bonnet compartment electrical centre that should not be power washed. This could cause damage that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

If using an automatic car wash, follow the car wash instructions. The windshield wiper and rear window wiper, if equipped, must be off. Remove any accessories that may be damaged or interfere with the car wash equipment.

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after, to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

Finish Care

Application of aftermarket clearcoat sealant/wax materials is not recommended. If painted surfaces are damaged, see your dealer to have the damage assessed and repaired. Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Occasional hand waxing or mild polishing should be done to remove residue from the paint finish. See your dealer for approved cleaning products.

Do not apply waxes or polishes to uncoated plastic, vinyl, rubber, decals, simulated wood, or flat paint as damage can occur.

⚠ Caution

Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on the vehicle.

To keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Mouldings

⚠ Caution

Failure to clean and protect the bright metal mouldings can result in a hazy white finish or pitting. This damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

The bright metal mouldings on the vehicle are aluminium. To prevent damage always follow these cleaning instructions:

- Be sure the moulding is cool to the touch before applying any cleaning solution.
- Use a cleaning solution approved for aluminium. Some cleaners are highly acidic or contain alkaline substances and can damage the mouldings.
- Always dilute a concentrated cleaner according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Do not use chrome cleaners.
- Do not use cleaners that are not intended for automotive use.
- Use a nonabrasive wax on the vehicle after washing to protect and extend the moulding finish.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/ Lenses, Emblems, Decals and Stripes

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth, and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps, lenses, emblems, decals and stripes. Follow instructions under "Washing the Vehicle" previously in this section.

Lamp covers are made of plastic, and some have a UV protective coating.

Use only lukewarm water, a soft cloth, and mild car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Do not clean or wipe them while they are dry.

Do not use any of the following on lamp covers:

- Abrasive or caustic agents.
- Washer fluids and other cleaning agents in higher concentrations than suggested by the manufacturer.

- Solvents, alcohols, fuels, or other harsh cleaners.
- Ice scrapers or other hard items.
- Aftermarket appearance caps or covers while the lamps are illuminated, due to excessive heat generated.

⚠ Caution

Failure to clean lamps properly can cause damage to the lamp cover that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

⚠ Caution

Using wax on low gloss black finish stripes can increase the gloss level and create a non-uniform finish. Clean low gloss stripes with soap and water only.

Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the bonnet and windshield when washing the vehicle.

Windscreen and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windscreen with glass cleaner.

Clean rubber blades using a lint-free cloth or paper towel soaked with windscreen washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windscreen thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap, and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking.

Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged. Damage can be caused by extreme dusty conditions, sand, salt, heat, sun, snow, and ice.

Weatherstrips

Apply Dielectric silicone grease on weatherstrips to make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Lubricate weatherstrips at least once a year. Hot, dry climates may require more frequent application. Black marks from rubber material on painted surfaces can be removed by rubbing with a clean cloth. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-3*.

Tyres

Use a stiff brush with tyre cleaner to clean the tyres.

⚠ Caution

Using petroleum-based tyre dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tyres. When applying a tyre dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.

Wheels and Trim — Aluminium or Chrome

Use a soft, clean cloth with mild soap and water to clean the wheels. After rinsing thoroughly with clean water, dry with a soft, clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

⚠ Caution

Chrome wheels and other chrome trim may be damaged if the vehicle is not washed after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium, calcium, or sodium chloride. These chlorides are used on roads for conditions such as ice and dust. Always wash the chrome with soap and water after exposure.

⚠ Caution

To avoid surface damage, do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminium or chrome-plated wheels. Use only approved cleaners. Also, never drive a vehicle with aluminium or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tyre cleaning brushes. Damage could occur and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Steering, Suspension, and Chassis Components

Visually inspect steering, suspension, and chassis components for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear at least once a year.

Inspect power steering for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc.

Visually check constant velocity joint boots and axle seals for leaks.

Body Component Lubrication

Lubricate all key lock cylinders, bonnet hinges, liftgate hinges, and the fuel door hinge unless the components are plastic. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.

Underbody Maintenance

At least twice a year, use plain water to flush dirt and debris from the vehicle's underbody. Your dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this. If not removed, rust and corrosion can develop.

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body

repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the vehicle warranty.

Finish Damage

Quickly repair minor chips and scratches with touch-up materials available from your dealer to avoid corrosion. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted vehicle surfaces causing blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface. See “Finish Care” previously in this section.

Interior Care

To prevent dirt particle abrasions, regularly clean the vehicle's interior. Immediately remove any soils. Note that newspapers or dark garments that can transfer colour to home furnishings can also permanently transfer colour to the vehicle's interior.

Use a soft bristle brush to remove dust from knobs and crevices on the instrument cluster. Using a mild soap solution, immediately remove hand lotions, sunscreen, and insect repellent from all interior surfaces or permanent damage may result.

Your dealer may have products for cleaning the interior. Use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned to prevent permanent damage. Apply all cleaners directly to the cleaning cloth. Do not spray cleaners directly on any switches or controls. Cleaners should be removed quickly. Never allow cleaners to remain on the surface being cleaned for extended periods of time.

Cleaners may contain solvents that can become concentrated in the interior. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening the doors and windows.

To prevent damage, do not clean the interior using the following cleaners or techniques:

- Never use a razor or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- Never use a brush with stiff bristles.
- Never rub any surface aggressively or with excessive pressure.
- Do not use laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. For liquid cleaners, use approximately 20 drops per

3.8 L of water. A concentrated soap solution will leave a residue that creates streaks and attracts dirt. Do not use solutions that contain strong or caustic soap.

- Do not heavily saturate the upholstery when cleaning.
- Do not use solvents or cleaners containing solvents.

Interior Glass

To clean, use a terry cloth fabric dampened with water. Wipe droplets left behind with a clean dry cloth. Commercial glass cleaners may be used, if necessary, after cleaning the interior glass with plain water.

⚠ Caution

To prevent scratching, never use abrasive cleaners on automotive glass. Abrasive cleaners or aggressive cleaning may damage the rear window demister.

Cleaning the windscreen with water during the first three to six months of ownership will reduce tendency to fog.

Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker will not be damaged. Clean spots with just water and mild soap.

Coated Mouldings

Coated mouldings should be cleaned.

- When lightly soiled, wipe with a sponge or soft lint-free cloth dampened with water.
- When heavily soiled, use warm soapy water.

Fabric/Carpet/Suede

Start by vacuuming the surface using a soft brush attachment. If a rotating brush attachment is being used during vacuuming, only use it on the floor carpet. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- Gently blot liquids with a paper towel. Continue blotting until no more soil can be removed.
- For solid soils, remove as much as possible prior to vacuuming.

To clean:

1. Saturate a clean lint-free colourfast cloth with water. Microfiber cloth is recommended to prevent lint transfer to the fabric or carpet.
2. Remove excess moisture by gently wringing until water does not drip from the cleaning cloth.

3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the centre. Fold the cleaning cloth to a clean area frequently to prevent forcing the soil in to the fabric.
4. Continue gently rubbing the soiled area until there is no longer any colour transfer from the soil to the cleaning cloth.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution followed only by plain water.

If the soil is not completely removed, it may be necessary to use a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. Test a small hidden area for colourfastness before using a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. If ring formation occurs, clean the entire fabric or carpet.

Following the cleaning process, a paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfiber cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfiber cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfiber cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfiber cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

⚠ Caution

Do not attach a device with a suction cup to the display. This may cause damage and would not be covered by the warranty.

Instrument Panel, Leather, Vinyl, Other Plastic Surfaces, Low Gloss Paint Surfaces and Natural Open Pore Wood Surfaces

Use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with water to remove dust and loose dirt. For a more thorough cleaning, use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with a mild soap solution.

⚠ Caution

Soaking or saturating leather, especially perforated leather, as well as other interior surfaces, may cause permanent damage. Wipe excess moisture from these surfaces after cleaning and allow them to dry naturally. Never use heat, steam, spot lifters, or spot removers. Do not use cleaners that contain silicone or wax-based products. Cleaners containing

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

these solvents can permanently change the appearance and feel of leather or soft trim and are not recommended.

Do not use cleaners that increase gloss, especially on the instrument panel. Reflected glare can decrease visibility through the windscreen under certain conditions.

⚠ Caution

Use of air fresheners may cause permanent damage to plastics and painted surfaces. If an air freshener comes in contact with any plastic or painted surface in the vehicle, blot immediately and clean with a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution. Damage caused by air fresheners would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Care of Seat Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ Warning

Do not bleach or dye seat belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean seat belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

Floor Mats

⚠ Warning

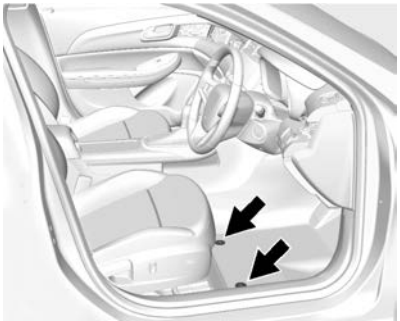
If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the pedals. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage:

- The original equipment floor mats were designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that GM certified floor mats be purchased. Non-GM floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the pedals. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

Removing and Replacing the Floor Mats

Pull up on the rear of the floor mat to unlock each retainer and remove.



Reinstall by lining up the floor mat retainer openings over the carpet retainers and snap into position.

Make sure the floor mat is properly secured in place.

Verify the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

Service and Maintenance

General Information
General Information 11-1

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-3

General Information

> **⚠ Caution**
>
> Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, recommended fluids, and lubricants are necessary to keep this vehicle in good working condition. Damage caused by failure to follow scheduled maintenance might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Proper vehicle maintenance helps to keep the vehicle in good working condition, improves fuel economy, and reduces vehicle emissions for better air quality.

The required maintenance intervals vary considerably between climates, geographical locations, terrain, and driving conditions. The Service/Warranty booklet provided with the vehicle shows the intervals required for the various maintenance procedures for your specific area. Follow the maintenance intervals in the Service/Warranty booklet.

Because of all the different ways people use vehicles, maintenance needs vary. The vehicle might need more frequent checks and services. Please read the information in the separate Service/Warranty booklet. To keep the vehicle in good condition, see your dealer.

The maintenance schedule is for vehicles that:

- Carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits. See *Additional Weights on page 12-4*.
- Are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- Use the recommended fuel. See *Fuel for Petrol Engines on page 9-26* and *Fuel for Diesel Engines on page 9-27*.

⚠ Warning

Performing maintenance work can be dangerous. Some jobs can cause serious injury. Perform maintenance work only if you have the required know-how and the proper tools and equipment. If in doubt, see your dealer to have a qualified technician do the work. See *Doing Your Own Service Work on page 10-2*.

At your dealer, you can be certain that you will receive the highest level of service available. Your dealer has specially trained service technicians, uses genuine replacement parts, as well as, up-to-date tools and equipment to ensure fast and accurate diagnostics.

The proper replacement parts, fluids, and lubricants to use are listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 11-3*.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Engine Oil Specification (Petrol 2.4L L4)	5W-30; (dexos1™)
Engine Oil Specification (Diesel 2.0L L4)	5W-30; (dexos2™)
Engine Coolant Specification	50% clean fresh water and 50% Dexcool® anti-freeze coolant, conforming to specification number GM6277M
Automatic Transmission Fluid (Petrol 2.4L L4)	DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid
Automatic Transmission Fluid (Diesel 2.0L L4)	Aisin AW-1 (GM Part Number 93165147)
Hydraulic Brake System	DOT 4 hydraulic brake fluid, conforming to specification number GMW3356
Hydraulic Power Steering System (If Equipped)	GM Power Steering Fluid (GM Part No. 89021184)

✍ NOTES

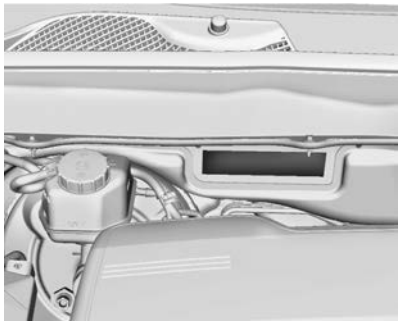
Technical Data

Vehicle Identification
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 12-1
Identification Plate 12-2

Vehicle Data
Engine Data 12-3
Vehicle Weight 12-3
Additional Weights 12-4
Capacities and Specifications 12-6
Tyre Pressure 12-7

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)



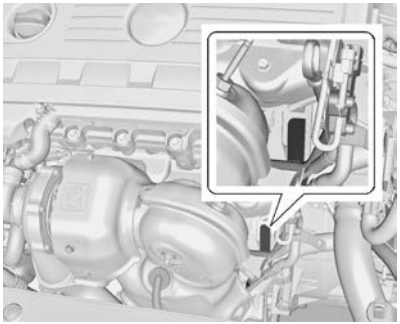
Each vehicle has its own, individual International Standards Organisation Vehicle Identification Number (ISOVIN), which is shown behind the windscreen on the left side and on the bulkhead on the rear of the engine compartment.

Identification Plate

Compliance label

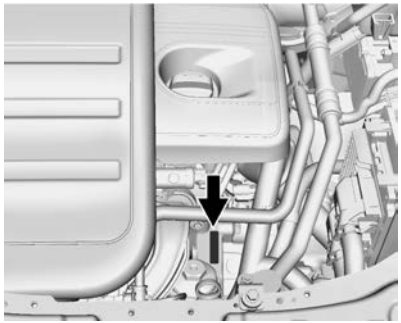
This label shows the vehicle make, model series, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), approved seating capacity, approval number, and compliance date.

Engine number location



Diesel 2.0L L4 Engine

The engine serial number is stamped into the metal to the right of the exhaust manifold.



Petrol 2.4L L4 Engine

The engine number is located inside the engine compartment.

It is stamped into the metal, rearwards of the dipstick.

Vehicle Data

Engine Data

Engine type	2.4L Petrol	2.0L Diesel
Engine	2384 cc	1956 cc
Fuel	Petrol	Diesel
Octane rating (RON)	Unleaded regular 91 or higher	—
Ethanol compatibility	E10	—

Vehicle Weight

Overloading is a safety hazard and could also shorten the life of the vehicle.

Maximum vehicle carrying capacity

	Carrying capacity (occupants, accessories and luggage) (kg)
2.4L Petrol	408
2.0L Diesel	408

Note:

- The carrying capacity assumes that no accessories are fitted. If accessories are fitted, the carrying capacity must be decreased accordingly. See *Additional Weights on page 12-4*.
- Axle limits must not be exceeded. See “Axle loads” later in this section.

Axle loads

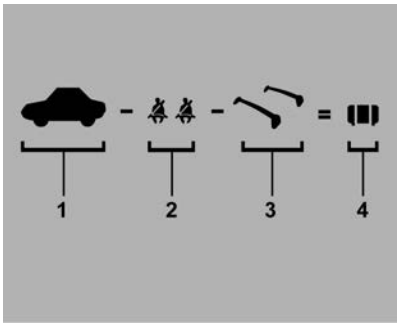
Maximum front and rear axle loads

Do not exceed the maximum axle loads, including the weight of any options or accessories fitted to the vehicle. Take the roof rack load into account when determining the rear axle load. Weigh at a weighbridge if unsure.

	Front axle load (kg)	Rear axle load (kg)
2.4L Petrol	1180	1270
2.0L Diesel	1270	1270

Additional Weights

Example loading guide



Example 1:

A. Vehicle carrying capacity (example 408 kg)

B. Subtract occupant weight (example 2 x 68 kg = 136 kg)

C. Subtract mass of fitted accessories (see the following table) (example 25 kg)

D. Available luggage capacity

(408 – 136 – 25 = 247 kg*)

*Subject to axle loads not being exceeded.

Example 2:

A. Vehicle carrying capacity (example 408 kg)

B. Subtract occupant weight (example 4 x 68 kg = 272 kg)

C. Subtract mass of fitted accessories (see table below) (example 50 kg)

D. Available luggage capacity (408 – 272 – 50 = 86 kg*)

*Subject to axle loads not being exceeded.

Accessory mass examples

Towbar	25.0 kg
Roof racks	5.0 kg

Capacities and Specifications

Engine type	2.4L Petrol	2.0L Diesel
Refill engine oil including filter (approximately)	4.7 L	4.5 L
Coolant (approximately)	7.1 L	6.1 L
Fuel tank	73.0 L	73.0 L
Wheel Nut Torque	150 N•m	150 N•m

Tyre Pressure

Tyre size Wheel size and profile	Recommended pressure													
	Normal load				Eco normal load				Maximum load				Spare	
	Front		Rear		Front		Rear		Front		Rear		—	
	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI
225/55 R17 97V 17 X 7 J	230	33	230	33	300	44	300	44	250	36	250	36	230	33
245/45 R18 100V 18 X 8 J	230	33	230	33	300	44	300	44	250	36	250	36	—	—

✍ NOTES

Customer Information

Customer Information
Customer Satisfaction Procedure 13-1
Customer Assistance Offices 13-1

Customer Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure

We want you to be happy with your new vehicle, together with the people you deal with while you have the vehicle.

Normally, any problems with the sales, operation, servicing, parts/accessories, or the validity of original equipment supplied with your vehicle will be handled by your Holden Dealer Sales and Service Department.

We realise, however, that with the best intentions, misunderstandings sometimes occur.

Therefore, we suggest you discuss any concern with one of the Holden Dealer management people.

If you have not received satisfaction from the Sales Manager or Service Manager, go to the General Manager or to the Dealer Principal.

By now, you should have satisfaction. If not, Holden Customer Assistance office is at your disposal.

Customer Assistance Offices

Australia

The Holden Customer Assistance representatives can be telephoned from anywhere within Australia for only the cost of a local call.

The contact number is:

1800 033 349

Naturally, telephoning is the quickest and the best way to contact. However, if you prefer to write, the address is:

The Manager
Holden Customer Assistance Centre
GPO Box 1714
Melbourne 3001

Your letter should clearly outline your concern or query and include:

- Your name and address

- Telephone numbers, both private and business
- Servicing dealer's name and address
- Vehicle model
- Vehicle Identification Number (ISOVIN), refer to the inside front cover of the Service/Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box
- Date of purchase
- Current odometer reading

Most of this information will be found on the Vehicle Identification Certificate, located inside the front cover of the Service/Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box.

Before you write, however, remember that the telephone is the quicker and more efficient means of communication.

New Zealand

The information in this owner manual applies primarily to Australian Holden vehicles and there may be some differences to the warranty and owner assistance provisions for New Zealand.

Applicable details for New Zealand are set out in the Holden Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet enclosed in the New Zealand glove box wallet.

New Zealand Assistance can be reached at:

0800 HOLDEN (0800 465 336)

This number provides access to New Zealand Roadside Assistance as well as New Zealand Customer Assistance.

If you prefer to write, the address is:

The Manager
Holden Customer Assistance Centre
P.O. Box 11195
Ellerslie
Auckland 1542
New Zealand

A

Accessories and Modifications 10-2
Accessory Power 9-5
Add-On Electrical Equipment 9-34
Additional Weights 12-4
Adjustments
Lumbar, Front Seats 3-4
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 10-11
Air Conditioning 8-1
Air Filter, Passenger Compartment 8-7
Air Vents 8-6
Airbag System
Check 3-22
How Does an Airbag Restrain? 3-20
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 3-20
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 3-20
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 3-19
Where Are the Airbags? 3-18
Airbags
Adding Equipment to the Vehicle 3-22
Readiness Light 5-10
Servicing Airbag-Equipped Vehicles 3-22
System Check 3-15
Alarm
Vehicle Security 2-10
AM-FM Radio 7-12
Anchor Fittings
Top Tether 3-31
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 9-12
Warning Light 5-13
Appearance Care
Exterior 10-57
Interior 10-62
Armrest
Rear Seat 3-9
Audio
Bluetooth 7-34
Audio Players 7-25
CD 7-25
Audio System
Backglass Antenna 7-15
Radio Reception 7-14
Automatic
Climate Control System 8-1
Door Locks 2-7
Headlamp System 6-2
Transmission 9-10
Transmission Fluid 10-11
Automatic Transmission
Manual Mode 9-11
Auxiliary Devices 7-33

B

Battery 10-21
Jump Starting 10-53
Load Management 6-5
Voltage and Charging Messages 5-21
Bluetooth 7-61
Bluetooth Audio 7-34
Bonnet 10-3
Boot 2-8

Brake
Parking, Electric 9-13
System Warning Light 5-12
Brake Lamps and Reverse Lamps
Bulb Replacement 10-25
Brakes 10-19
Antilock 9-12
Assist 9-15
Fluid 10-20
System Messages 5-21
Braking 9-2
Break-In, New Vehicle 9-3
Bulb Replacement 10-26
Fog Lamps 10-25
Halogen Bulbs 10-23
Headlamp Aiming 10-22
Headlamps 10-23
Headlamps, Front Turn
Signal, and Park Lamps ... 10-23
Number Plate Lamps 10-25
Taillamps, Turn Signal,
Brake Lamps, and
Reverse Lamps 10-25
Buying New Tyres 10-37

C

Camera
Rear Vision (RVC) 9-24
Capacities and
Specifications 12-6
Carbon Monoxide
Boot 2-8
Engine Exhaust 9-8
Cargo
Tie-Downs 4-3
Cautions, Danger, and
Warnings iii
CD Player 7-25
Centre Console Storage 4-3
Chains, Tyre 10-38
Charging System Light 5-10
Check
Engine Light 5-10
Child Restraints
Infants and Young
Children 3-25
ISOFIX 3-35
Older Children 3-23
Securing 3-35, 3-36
Systems 3-27
Cleaning
Exterior Care 10-57
Interior Care 10-62
Climate Control Systems
Automatic 8-1
Dual Automatic 8-4
Clock 5-5
Cluster, Instrument 5-7
Compressor Kit, Tyre
Sealant 10-40
Configure Menu 7-50
Control of a Vehicle 9-2
Controls
Steering Wheel 7-7
Convex Mirrors 2-12
Coolant
Engine 10-13
Engine Temperature Gauge ... 5-9
Cooling System 10-12
Engine Messages 5-22
Courtesy Lamps 6-4
Cruise Control 9-20
Light 5-17
Messages 5-22
Cupholders 4-2

Customer Assistance Offices 13-1
Customer Satisfaction Procedure 13-1

D

Danger, Warnings, and Cautions iii
Database Coverage Explanations 7-54
Destination, Navigation 7-40
Devices
Auxiliary 7-33
USB 7-27
Diesel Particulate Filter 9-8
Diesel Particulate Filter Light 5-15
Diesel Particulate Filter Messages 5-24
Dome Lamps 6-4
Door
Ajar Light 5-18
Ajar Messages 5-22
Ajar Reminder 2-7
Locks 2-6
Power Locks 2-7
Driver Information Centre (DIC) 5-18
Driving For Better Fuel Economy 1-16
Dual Automatic Climate Control System 8-4

E

Electric Parking Brake 9-13
Electric Parking Brake Light . . . 5-12
Electrical Equipment, Add-On 9-34
Electrical System
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 10-27
Fuses 10-27
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 10-31
Overload 10-26
Electronic Stability Control 9-18
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator Warning Light 5-14
Electronic Stability Control Indicator Light 5-14
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 10-11
Check and Service Engine Soon Light 5-10
Compartment Overview 10-4
Coolant 10-13
Coolant Temperature Gauge . . . 5-9
Cooling System 10-12
Cooling System Messages . . . 5-22
Exhaust 9-8
Oil Life System 10-10
Oil Messages 5-23
Overheating 10-16
Power Messages 5-23
Pressure Light 5-15
Reduced Power Light 5-17
Running While Parked 9-10
Starting 9-5
Engine Data 12-3
Engines
Diesel Fuel 9-27
Petrol Fuel 9-26
Entry Lighting 6-5
Exit Lighting 6-5
Exterior Lamp Controls 6-1
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder . . . 6-1

F

Filter
Diesel Particulate 9-8
Filter,
Engine Air Cleaner 10-11
Flashers, Hazard Warning 6-2
Flat Tyre 10-38
Changing 10-48
Floor Mats 10-65
Fluid
Automatic Transmission 10-11
Brakes 10-20
Power Steering 10-17
Washer 10-18
Fog Lamps
Bulb Replacement 10-25
Front 6-3
Folding Mirrors 2-13
Front Fog Lamp
Light 5-17
Front Seats
Adjustment 3-3
Heated 3-6
Fuel 9-26
Additives 9-26
Diesel Engines 9-27
Economy Driving 1-16
Filling a Portable Fuel
Container 9-29
Filling the Tank 9-28
Gauge 5-8
Low Fuel Warning Light 5-16
Petrol Engines 9-26
System Messages 5-24
Fuel for Diesel Engines 9-27
Full-Size Spare Tyre 10-53
Fuses 10-27
Engine Compartment
Fuse Block 10-27
Instrument Panel Fuse
Block 10-31

G

Gauges
Engine Coolant
Temperature 5-9
Fuel 5-8
Odometer 5-8
Speedometer 5-8
Gauges (cont'd)
Tachometer 5-8
Trip Odometer 5-8
Warning Lights and
Indicators 5-6
General Information
Service and Maintenance 11-1
Vehicle Care 10-2
Global Positioning
System (GPS) 7-52
Glovebox 4-1

H

Halogen Bulbs 10-23
Hazard Warning Flashers 6-2
Head Restraints 3-2
Headlamp Flash 6-2
Headlamps
Aiming 10-22
Automatic 6-2
Bulb Replacement 10-23
Headlamp Flash 6-2
High-Beam On Light 5-17
High/Low Beam Changer 6-1
Lamps On Reminder 5-17
Heated Front Seats 3-6

Heated Mirrors 2-13
Heating and Air Conditioning . . . 8-1
High-Beam On Light 5-17
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 9-15
Horn 5-3
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 3-11

I

Identification Plate 12-2
If the System Needs Service . . . 7-54
Ignition Positions 9-3
Infants and Young Children, Restraints 3-25
Info
Quick 7-15
Instrument Cluster 5-7
Instrument Panel Storage Area 4-1
Internet Radio Pandora 7-16
Introduction iii
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 3-35

J

Jump Starting 10-53

K

Key and Lock Messages 5-24
Keyless Entry
Remote (RKE) System 2-3
Keys 2-1

L

Lamps
Courtesy 6-4
Dome 6-4
Exterior Controls 6-1
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder 6-1
Front Fog 6-3
Headlamps, Front Turn Signal, and Park Lamps . . . 10-23
Malfunction Indicator 5-10
Messages 5-24
Lamps (cont'd)
Number Plate 10-25
On Reminder 5-17
Reading 6-5
Lap-Shoulder Belt 3-11
LED Lighting 10-23
Light
Diesel Particulate Filter 5-15
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator Warning 5-14
Lighting
Entry 6-5
Exit 6-5
Illumination Control 6-4
LED 10-23
Lights
Airbag Readiness 5-10
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 5-13
Brake System Warning 5-12
Charging System 5-10
Cruise Control 5-17
Door Ajar 5-18
Electric Parking Brake 5-12
Engine Oil Pressure 5-15

Lights (cont'd)
Front Fog Lamp 5-17
Headlamp Flash 6-2
High-Beam On 5-17
High/Low Beam Changer 6-1
Low Fuel Warning 5-16
Reduced Engine Power 5-17
Seat Belt Reminders 5-9
Security 5-16
Service Vehicle Soon 5-11
Traction Off 5-13
Wait to Start 5-15
Locks
Automatic Door 2-7
Door 2-6
Power Door 2-7
Safety 2-8
Low Fuel Warning Light 5-16
Lumbar Adjustment 3-4
Front Seats 3-4

M

Maintenance Schedule
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 11-3
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 5-10
Manual Mode 9-11
Map Data Updates 7-54
Maps 7-38
Menu
Configure 7-50
Messages
Battery Voltage and Charging 5-21
Brake System 5-21
Diesel Particulate Filter 5-24
Door Ajar 5-22
Engine Cooling System 5-22
Engine Oil 5-23
Engine Power 5-23
Fuel System 5-24
Key and Lock 5-24
Lamp 5-24
Object Detection System 5-25
Ride Control System 5-25
Service Vehicle 5-25
Starting the Vehicle 5-26
Messages (cont'd)
Transmission 5-26
Vehicle 5-21
Vehicle Reminder 5-26
Washer Fluid 5-26
Window 5-26
Messaging
Text 7-67
Mirrors
Convex 2-12
Folding 2-13
Heated 2-13
Manual Rear View 2-13
Power 2-13

N

Navigation
Destination 7-40
Symbols 7-38
Using the System 7-35
New vehicle running-in 9-3

O

Object Detection System
Messages 5-25
Odometer 5-8
Trip 5-8
Oil
Engine 10-7
Engine Oil Life System 10-10
Messages 5-23
Pressure Light 5-15
Older Children, Restraints 3-23
Outlets
Power 5-5
Overheating, Engine 10-16
Overview, Infotainment
System 7-1

P

Pandora Internet Radio 7-16
Park
Shifting Into 9-6
Shifting Out of 9-6
Parking
Over Things That Burn 9-8
Parking Assist
Ultrasonic 9-22
Passenger Compartment Air
Filter 8-7
Personalisation
Vehicle 5-27
Phone
Bluetooth 7-61
Power
Door Locks 2-7
Mirrors 2-13
Outlets 5-5
Reduced Engine Light 5-17
Retained Accessory (RAP) 9-5
Seat Adjustment 3-4
Steering Fluid 10-17
Windows 2-14
Pregnancy, Using Seat
Belts 3-14
Preheating Light 5-15
Pressure
Tyre 12-7
Problems with Route
Guidance 7-54

Q

Quick Info 7-15

R

Radios
AM-FM Radio 7-12
Reception 7-14
Reading Lamps 6-5
Rear Seat Armrest 3-9
Rear Seats 3-7
Rear View Mirrors 2-13
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 9-24
Reclining Seatbacks 3-5
Recommended Fluids and
Lubricants 11-3
Reduced Engine Power
Light 5-17
Remote Keyless Entry
(RKE) System 2-2, 2-3
Replacement Bulbs 10-26
Replacement Parts
Airbags 3-23
Replacing Airbag System 3-23
Replacing Seat Belt System
Parts after a Crash 3-15

Restraints
Where to Put 3-30
Retained Accessory
Power (RAP) 9-5
Ride Control Systems 9-18
Electronic Stability (ESC) 9-18
Messages 5-25
Rotation, Tyres 10-35
Running the Vehicle While
Parked 9-10

S

Safety Locks 2-8
Safety System Check 3-14
Sealant Kit, Tyre 10-40
Seat Belts 3-9
Care 3-14
How to Wear Seat Belts
Properly 3-11
Lap-Shoulder Belt 3-11
Reminders 5-9
Replacing after a Crash 3-15
Use During Pregnancy 3-14
Seats
Adjustment, Front 3-3
Head Restraints 3-2
Heated Front 3-6
Lumbar Adjustment, Front 3-4
Power Adjustment, Front 3-4
Rear 3-7
Reclining Seatbacks 3-5
Securing Child
Restraints 3-35, 3-36
Security
Light 5-16
Vehicle 2-10
Vehicle Alarm 2-10
Service
Accessories and
Modifications 10-2
Doing Your Own Work 10-2
Engine Soon Light 5-10
Maintenance, General
Information 11-1
Vehicle Messages 5-25
Vehicle Soon Light 5-11
Servicing the Airbag 3-22
Shifting
Into Park 9-6
Out of Park 9-6
Signals, Turn and
Lane-Change 6-3
Specifications and
Capacities 12-6
Speedometer 5-8
Start Assist, Hills 9-15
Starting the Engine 9-5
Starting the Vehicle
Messages 5-26
Steering 9-2
Fluid, Power 10-17
Wheel Adjustment 5-2
Wheel Controls 5-2
Steering Wheel Controls 7-7
Storage Areas
Centre Console 4-3
Glovebox 4-1
Instrument Panel 4-1
Sunglasses 4-2
Storing the Tyre Sealant
and Compressor Kit 10-48
Sun Visors 2-16
Sunglass Storage 4-2

Symbols iv
Symbols, Navigation 7-38
System Needs Service 7-54

T

Tachometer 5-8
Tail lamps
Bulb Replacement 10-25
Technical Data
Tyre Pressure 12-7
Text 7-67
Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-11
Time 5-5
Top Tether Anchor Fittings 3-31
Towing
Trailer 9-30
Vehicle 10-56
Traction
Control System (TCS) 9-16
Off Light 5-13
Trailer
Towing 9-30
Transmission
Automatic 9-10
Fluid, Automatic 10-11
Messages 5-26
Trip Odometer 5-8
Turn and Lane-Change
Signals 6-3
Turn Signal
Bulb Replacement 10-25
Tyre Pressure 12-7
Tyres
Buying New Tyres 10-37
Chains 10-38
Changing 10-48
Full-Size Spare 10-53
If a Tyre Goes Flat 10-38
Inspection 10-35
Rotation 10-35
Sealant and
Compressor Kit 10-40
Sealant and Compressor
Kit, Storing 10-48
Wheel Alignment and
Tyre Balance 10-37
Wheel Replacement 10-37
When It Is Time for New
Tyres 10-36

U

Ultrasonic Parking Assist 9-22
Updates
Map Data 7-54
USB 7-27
Using the System 7-7
Using This Manual iii

V

Vehicle
Alarm System 2-10
Control 9-2
Identification
Number (VIN) 12-1
Messages 5-21
Personalisation 5-27
Positioning 7-53
Reminder Messages 5-26
Security 2-10
Service Soon Light 5-11
Towing 10-56
Vehicle Care
Storing the Tyre Sealant
and Compressor Kit 10-48
Tyre Pressure 10-34

Vehicle Identification
Plate 12-2
Vehicle Weight 12-3
Ventilation, Air 8-6
Visors 2-16
Voice Recognition 7-55

W

Warning
Brake System Light 5-12
Warning Lights, Gauges, and
Indicators 5-6
Warnings iii
Cautions and Danger iii
Hazard Flashers 6-2
Washer Fluid 10-18
Messages 5-26
Weights
Additional 12-4
Vehicle 12-3
Wheels
Alignment and Tyre
Balance 10-37
Replacement 10-37
When It Is Time for New
Tyres 10-36
Where to Put the Restraint 3-30
Windows 2-14
Messages 5-26
Power 2-14
Windscreen
Wiper/Washer 5-3